

7th
edition

Lauren Kessler
Duncan McDonald

WHEN **W**
W **O**
W **R**
W **D** **COLLIDE**
W **S**

A Media Writer's
Guide to Grammar
and Style

When Words Collide

A Media Writer's Guide
to Grammar and Style

From the Wadsworth Series in Mass Communication and Journalism

General Mass Communication

- Anokwa/Lin/Salwen, *International Communication: Issues and Controversies*
- Biagi, *Media/Impact: An Introduction to Mass Media*, Eighth Edition
- Bucy, *Living in the Information Age: A New Media Reader*, Second Edition
- Day, *Ethics in Media Communications: Cases and Controversies*, Fifth Edition
- Dennis/Merrill, *Media Debates: Great Issues for the Digital Age*, Fourth Edition
- Fellow, *American Media History*
- Hilmes, *Connections: A Broadcast History Reader*
- Hilmes, *Only Connect: A Cultural History of Broadcasting in the United States*, Second Edition
- Jamieson/Campbell, *The Interplay of Influence: News, Advertising, Politics, and the Mass Media*, Sixth Edition
- Kamalipour, *Global Communication*, Second Edition
- Lester, *Visual Communication: Images with Messages*, Fourth Edition
- Overbeck, *Major Principles of Media Law*, 2008 Edition
- Straubhaar/LaRose, *Media Now: Understanding Media, Culture, and Technology*, Fifth Edition 2008 Update
- Zelezny, *Communications Law: Liberties, Restraints, and the Modern Media*, Fifth Edition
- Zelezny, *Cases in Communications Law*, Fifth Edition

Journalism

- Bowles/Borden, *Creative Editing*, Fifth Edition
- Craig, *Online Journalism*
- Hilliard, *Writing for Television, Radio, and New Media*, Eighth Edition

- Kessler/McDonald, *When Words Collide: A Media Writer's Guide to Grammar and Style*, Seventh Edition
- Poulter/Tidwell, *News Scene 2.0: Interactive Writing Exercises*
- Rich, *Writing and Reporting News: A Coaching Method*, Fifth Edition
- Rich, *Writing and Reporting News: A Coaching Method, Student Exercise Workbook*, Fifth Edition
- Stephens, *Broadcast News*, Fourth Edition
- Wilber/Miller, *Modern Media Writing*

Photojournalism and Photography

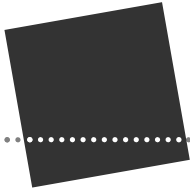
- Parrish, *Photojournalism: An Introduction*

Public Relations and Advertising

- Diggs-Brown, *The PR Styleguide: Formats for Public Relations Practice*, Second Edition
- Hendrix/Hayes, *Public Relations Cases*, Seventh Edition
- Drewniany/Jewler, *Creative Strategy in Advertising*, Ninth Edition
- Newsom/Haynes, *Public Relations Writing: Form and Style*, Eighth Edition
- Newsom/Turk/Kruckeberg, *This Is PR: The Realities of Public Relations*, Ninth Edition

Research and Theory

- Baran/Davis, *Mass Communication Theory: Foundations, Ferment, and Future*, Fourth Edition
- Littlejohn, *Theories of Human Communication*, Seventh Edition
- Rubin/Rubin/Piele, *Communication Research: Strategies and Sources*, Sixth Edition
- Sparks, *Media Effects Research: A Basic Overview*, Second Edition
- Wimmer/Dominick, *Mass Media Research: An Introduction*, Eighth Edition



Seventh Edition

When Words Collide

A Media Writer's Guide
to Grammar and Style

Lauren Kessler

University of Oregon

Duncan McDonald

University of Oregon

THOMSON
—★—
WADSWORTH

Australia • Brazil • Canada • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States



When Words Collide:
A Media Writer's Guide to Grammar and Style
Seventh Edition
Kessler/McDonald

Editor in Chief: *PJ Boardman*
Publisher: *Lyn Uhl*
Assistant Editor: *Kelli Strieby*
Editorial Assistant: *Kimberly Apfelbaum*
Associate Technology Project Manager:
Lucinda Bingham
Senior Marketing Manager: *Karin*
Sandberg
Marketing Assistant: *Mary Anne Payumo*
Marketing Communications Manager:
Jessica Perry

Content Project Manager: *Jennifer*
Kostka
Executive Art Director: *Maria Epes*
Print Buyer: *Doreen Suruki*
Production Service/Composer:
Pre-Press Company, Inc.
Text Designer: *Glenna Collett*
Cover Designer: *Marsha Cohen/*
Parallelogram Graphics
Text/Cover Printer: *Transcontinental*
Printing/Louisville

© 2008, 2004 Thomson Wadsworth,
a part of The Thomson Corporation.
Thomson, the Star logo, and Wadsworth
are trademarks used herein under license.

Thomson Higher Education
25 Thomson Place
Boston, MA 02210-1202
USA

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright hereon may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, web distribution, information storage and retrieval systems, or in any other manner—without the written permission of the publisher.

Every effort has been made to verify the authenticity and sources of URLs listed in this book. All URLs were correctly linked to their websites at the time of publication. Due to the quickly evolving nature of the Internet, however, it is possible that a link may break or a URL may change or become obsolete. Should you discover any inconsistencies, please contact <http://www.thomsonedu.com/support> and a correction will be made for the next printing.

For more information about our products, contact us at:

Thomson Learning
Academic Resource Center
1-800-423-0563

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit a request online at

<http://www.thomsonrights.com>
Any additional questions about permissions can be submitted by e-mail to **thomsonrights@thomson.com**

Printed in Canada
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 11 10 09 08 07
ISBN-13: 978-0-495-05025-4
ISBN-10: 0-495-05025-3
Library of Congress Control Number:
2006940689

Contents

Preface ix

PART ONE Understanding Grammar and Style 1

CHAPTER 1 grmr: CWOT? 3

Insta-Talk 3

What Does Your E-mail Say about You? 4

Beware the Media Multitasker 6

CHAPTER 2 10 Little Secrets, 10 Big Mistakes 7

The 10 Secrets of Writing Well 7

Grammar Is Everywhere 13

Making Mistakes 14

What You Don't Know . . . 15

The Point of Grammar 18

CHAPTER 3 Parts of Speech, Part 1: The Verb Is THE Word 19

The Verb: Power to the Sentence 19

Verb Functions 20

Verb Forms 20

Verb Number 23

Verb Tense 24

Principal Parts of Verbs 24

The "Voice" of Verbs 25

The “Mood” of Verbs 26
Verbals: Loving to Fool You 26

CHAPTER 4 Parts of Speech, Part 2: Completing the Picture 29

Why We Focus on Parts of Speech 30
Nouns 31
Pronouns 32
Adjectives 35
Adverbs 38
Prepositions 40
Conjunctions 42
Interjections 44

CHAPTER 5 The Sentence 45

Sentence Parts 47
Phrases and Clauses 48
Types of Sentences 50
A Good Sentence 52
Sentence Errors 52
The Lead Sentence 66

CHAPTER 6 Agreement: The Search for Harmony and Order 69

Subject–Verb Agreement 70
Pronoun Reference: The Antecedent Search 78
Parallel Structure 79

CHAPTER 7 Case: It’s All about Relationships 85

Nominative Case 86
Objective Case 90
Possessive Case 92

CHAPTER 8	Punctuation: Graceful Movements, Confident Stops	99
Some Basic Guidelines	100	
Period	101	
Comma	102	
Semicolon	109	
Colon	112	
Dash	113	
Quotation Marks	114	
Hyphen	117	
Apostrophe	119	
Ellipses	120	
Parentheses	121	
Question Mark and Exclamation Mark	122	
CHAPTER 9	Spelling	123
Why We Struggle with Correct Spellings	124	
Detecting Misspellings: Look, Listen and Look Again	125	
Strategies for Improving Spelling	127	
Some Final Words (to Master)	135	
CHAPTER 10	Clarity, Conciseness, Coherence	137
Choosing Words	137	
Putting Words Together	144	
Making Sense	148	
Clarity, Conciseness, Coherence	151	
CHAPTER 11	Style	153
What Is Style?	153	
Liveliness	155	
Originality	158	

Rhythm and Sound 161
Imagery 167
Writing with Style 171

CHAPTER 12 Sense and Sensitivity 173

Sexism 174
Heterosexism 179
Racism 181
Ageism 182
“Able-Bodiedism” 184
The *-isms* Golden Rule 184

PART TWO Topical Guide to Grammar and
Word Use 185

Index 233

Preface

Welcome writers—veteran and in-training, would-be and wanna-be. And welcome, too, those of you brought kicking and screaming to a book on grammar. However you got here, we're glad to have you. We're glad to share our love of language and our commitment to correct, crisp and compelling prose.

If you want to write well, whether you're crafting a blog or a biography, a news story or a novel, a magazine piece or a piece of advertising copy, you need to use words with precision and pizzazz. If you want to spark discussion, ignite emotions, capture experience or tell stories, you need to excel in the art of communication. We can help you. "When Words Collide" can help you.

There are those who find the study of grammar endlessly fascinating. More power to them. We don't count ourselves in their midst. We are writers who understand that the better we know the tools of our trade—words and how to use them—the better writers we will be. We realize that we *need* grammar. We get frustrated, just like you, with grammar's intricacies and inconsistencies, its sometimes finicky rules and occasionally exasperating exceptions. But we know that the reward for mastering grammar is the ability to write with clarity, power and grace—and that's quite a reward.

It is from our perspective as committed writers, avid readers and (we hope) thoughtful teachers that we offer the seventh edition of "When Words Collide." We want you to stick with us, read the book carefully, use it as a reference while you write. Learn grammar not for its own sake, not—*please*—to pass some test, but rather because grammar is the foundation of good writing.

We think this edition of "When Words Collide" is the best yet. We've expanded and clarified, edited and polished. We've added a new chapter,

combined others, offered new examples and created new entries in Part 2. Here are some specifics:

- A new first chapter that focuses on the difference between casual writing (e-mails, text messages) and professional writing
- The former first and second chapters now combined to focus on tips for writing well and the grammatical stumbling blocks that impede the process
- A restructured chapter on the sentence that includes a full discussion of passive voice
- An even clearer, more comprehensive look at parts of speech
- New, entertaining and instructive examples of powerful, stylish writing

We hope this book helps you become the best writer you can be. We hope you keep it on your desk for years to come.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank the following reviewers for their ideas and comments: Rhonda Gibson, *University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill*; Marie Hardin, *Pennsylvania State University*; Veronica Ellis, *Boston University*; Dana Ellis, *University of Southern California*; and Betsy Edgerton, *Columbia College Chicago*. We especially thank the many teachers around the country who have enthusiastically supported our efforts and have made “When Words Collide” a part of their classes. We thank the thousands of students who have struggled with the complexities of the English language on the road to becoming professional writers. We dedicate this book to them and to our families.

Lauren Kessler
Duncan McDonald
Eugene, Oregon

When Words Collide

A Media Writer's Guide
to Grammar and Style

This page intentionally left blank

PART

ONE



Understanding Grammar and Style

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER
1

grmr: CWOT?

Cn u rd ths?

If you can, then we don't have to translate the title of this chapter. (It's "Grammar: Complete Waste of Time?" for those not fully conversant with the vocabulary of text messaging. Oops, we mean txt msgng.) Why do we begin a book about grammar with a reference to text messaging? Stay with us for a moment as we explain.

INSTA-TALK

Grammar and text messaging go together like peanut butter and eggs. Or ham and jelly. You get the idea. The accepted rules of grammar, spelling and punctuation—the rules that govern the use of language—don't apply to text messaging or IMing or even e-mailing, which are the most common ways we communicate with each other these days (when we're not talking on cell phones). That means that the way we are comfortable communicating every day conflicts with the way we must learn to communicate as media professionals.

A word about rules, grammatical and otherwise: When we all agree on the rules and play by them, whether the game is an actual game, like basketball, or a metaphoric game, like writing, then the game proceeds. We can choose to play it (for example, we can write), or we can choose to watch it (read). But either way, we understand what's going on. We can follow and enjoy the game because the accepted and acknowledged rules that underlie it give it form and a pleasing predictability. A simple, accepted rule of grammar, for example, is that the word that begins a

sentence starts with a capital letter. Another is that a sentence ends with a piece of terminal punctuation. Spelling, of course, is all about rules: doubling or not doubling consonants, possessives and contractions, *-ence* versus *-ance*, *i* before *e* except after *c*.

But when you're striding down the street, using your thumbs to click on a tiny touchpad, and when what you tap out has to fit on the receiver's 160-character cell phone screen, the usual rules just don't apply. Of course, it's not just the medium that negates the traditional rules. It is also the purpose, the goal—*why* you are playing the game. Text messaging, an abbreviation of computer instant messaging (which is, itself, an abbreviation of e-mail), is all about quick, casual, instantaneous communication. The purpose is not to communicate intellectually or emotionally complex material. The emoticon is about as deep as it gets. The purpose is not to have far-ranging discussions or reason out a problem or to bring up thought-provoking issues. The purpose is to check in—*r u ok?*—or to confirm a date—*cu @ 10?*—or make a quick comment—*BTDT* (been there, done that), *NBD* (no big deal).

Okay. The lesson thus far is that “formal” written communication, from college essays to press releases, from corporate reports to magazine features, follows certain rules that “informal” communication like text messaging and IMing do not.

Fine. What's the problem?

The problem is not realizing that there are different rules for different kinds of communication. The problem is that when you practice—*every day, many times a day*—a certain way of writing (the shortcut, non-traditional-rules way of writing), you can get so comfortable with it that you forget how specialized it is. You forget it was created for a narrow purpose, insta-talk, and not for the wider, more important, long-term purpose of communicating thoughts, ideas, issues, information and opinions across time and space. Just because the coded shorthand of the txt msg works when you are text messaging doesn't mean it works when you are writing a news story or a press release. Just because lack of punctuation is fine when you IM your friend does not mean it is fine when you write a report for your boss—or, for that matter, when you e-mail your boss.

WHAT DOES YOUR E-MAIL SAY ABOUT YOU?

Compared with text messaging and IMing, e-mail seems old-fashioned, stodgy even. Although not as impossibly quaint as an actual letter

placed in an actual envelope and deposited in an actual mailbox, e-mail is nonetheless comparatively prim and proper. E-mailers spend more time (and use more words) constructing messages than IMers or texters. They are more likely to write in full sentences and less likely to use shortcuts (*b4*, *gr8*, *g2cu*) or abbreviations (*gtg*) or contractions that may, with enough use, confound correct spelling (*thnx*, *ur*). Adhering to grammatical conventions makes sense because e-mail is, in fact, more formal than IMing or texting. Although friends certainly e-mail friends in a casual way, e-mail is also an integral part of the business and professional world. In fact, e-mail has almost entirely replaced the phone for workplace communication.

Dependence on e-mail in the workplace, combined with its limbo-land status—less formal than the business letters or memos of old, more formal than friend-to-friend text messaging—is creating big problems, say those in the business world. According to a survey of 120 American corporations, one-third of employees in the nation’s top-notch companies write so poorly (in both e-mails and reports) that businesses are spending more than \$3 billion a year on remedial training.

What’s wrong with these e-mails? Some employ conventions that are uncomfortably close to the shorthand used by teenage texters (*Thnx 4 ur cooperation*, for example). The message being sent—not the words themselves but the underlying message—is immaturity, lack of professionalism and a slapdash attitude, which is not what you want to communicate about yourself, your ideas or your company. Other e-mails, according to the consultants and writing coaches in the corporate trenches, are just the opposite: inflated and flabby, stuffed with polysyllabic words, cluttered phrasing and tortured sentence structure. And then there are the incoherent e-mails, whose meaning eludes—or, often worse, misguides—their receivers. These e-mails are riddled with incorrect punctuation, misplaced or dangling modifiers, incorrect word choice or syntax so tangled that it would take a machete to cut through it. The grammar—or lack thereof—prevents people from understanding one another.

The lessons to be learned from the corporate experience are important ones. The first one, of course, is that clear written communication matters—not just for those in the communication business but for everyone in the world of work. The second is that the cavalier attitude toward grammatical conventions that comes from, and is daily reinforced by, IMing and texting is decidedly *not* the attitude a media writer (or any working professional) wants to take. And here’s a third lesson we’ll just throw in: Just because you can type fast, doesn’t mean you should write fast.

BEWARE THE MEDIA MULTITASKER

Here's a final idea to consider as you navigate the terrain between casual and professional communication: Media multitasking may be dangerous to your (professional) health—and most certainly to your growth as a writer.

In high school or college you may have become accustomed to media overload. You IM a friend while listening to your iPod, doing a homework assignment and playing an online video game. You check your e-mail while shopping eBay and talking on your cell phone. That may work for you, or you may *think* it works for you, but now that you're on the road to becoming a media writer, it's time to reconsider. Decades of research have shown that the more tasks multitaskers attempt, the worse they do at them. Quality of output as well as depth of thought deteriorate as the number of tasks increases.

In fact, brain research shows that there is no such thing as multitasking. The brain cannot do two tasks simultaneously, unless one is what researchers call a “highly practiced skill.” That means—not to worry—you *can* walk and chew gum at the same time. But the brain cannot simultaneously perform tasks that require focus, like writing, reading or carrying on a conversation. Instead, a kind of toggle mechanism allows the brain to switch from one activity to another. You may think you are talking to a friend and checking out a Web site simultaneously, but your brain is really switching rapidly between one activity and another.

The bad news? When you try to perform two or more related tasks, either at the same time or alternating quickly between them, you not only make far more errors than you would if you concentrated on each task individually, but you take far longer (as much as double the time) to complete the jobs than if you had focused on each in sequence.

Learning to use language correctly, crisply, gracefully, powerfully—which is what this book is about—takes focus and concentration. Our advice: Regardless of the habits you may have developed, when it comes to writing, become a unitasker.

Start now.

10 Little Secrets, 10 Big Mistakes

We call this book a “guide to grammar and style,” but it is really a guide to writing well. That’s because grammar is the cornerstone of good writing.

Don’t think of grammar as a litany of rules meant to confuse or constrain you—or, worse yet, to be learned in isolation, outside the act of writing. Think of grammar as the instruction manual that will help you master the tools of the writer’s trade: words, phrases, sentences, paragraphs. We’re not saying that knowing grammar will automatically transform you into a great writer any more than knowing the rules and rudiments of golf will transform you into Tiger Woods. We are saying that the rules underlay the game—and the game is writing well. So, before we start with the rules, let’s remember *why* we are learning them in the first place. Let’s remember the game. Let’s focus for a moment on writing and what it takes to write well.

THE 10 SECRETS OF WRITING WELL

Are there really *10* secrets to writing well? Maybe there is only one—truly caring about writing so that it is a priority in your life—but we think these others will help you along the path. Here are our 10 secrets.

Secret #1: Read

Reading is not just a way to find out about the world, or yourself; it is an immersion in language. Whether you read a microbiology textbook

or a murder mystery, a news magazine or a fantasy epic, you are swimming in words, awash in sentences, carried along by a stream of paragraphs. Whether you know it or not, you are learning language along with whatever else you are reading. You are learning vocabulary and syntax, words and how they are put together. You are learning how language flows (or doesn't).

The lessons can be positive and obvious, as when you marvel at a passage that transports you to another time or place, or when, mid-paragraph, you feel in the grip of ideas or emotions. That's a writer forging a connection with words, and it's a lesson you take with you, consciously or not, after you close the book or put away the magazine. The more you read, the more you have these experiences, the more embedded becomes the beauty and the precision of language. Of course, the lessons can be negative as well—the book that puts you to sleep mid-page, the newspaper story you stop reading after the first paragraph. You are learning something here, too: You are learning what doesn't work, how not to put words together, how not to tell a story.

Imagine wanting to be a musician and not listening to music. That's as odd and wrongheaded as aspiring to be a writer and not reading.

Secret #2: Have Something to Say

That sounds too obvious, doesn't it? But how many times have you sat in front of your computer screen, mind numb, unable to write a single intelligent sentence? You tell yourself you have writer's block. You don't have writer's block. You are more likely suffering from a dearth of material, a paucity of ideas—the lack of something to say. Perhaps you haven't worked your ideas through in your head. You aren't clear about what you think. Or maybe you haven't done the necessary research. You don't know your subject well enough yet. You can't write well if you are not in command of the material. You can't write well if you don't know what you want to say.

Consider how all of us, at times, are reduced to babbling. Sometimes our lips seem to be moving faster than our brains. Words come out. We sputter, stop and start, ramble, backtrack, circumlocute. The lips keep moving, but there is little sense and less meaning behind the words because we haven't stopped to figure out what we want to say. Friends may indulge us, but readers don't. Readers stop reading.

Secret #3: Organize Your Thoughts

Without a plan, writing well is much more difficult than it needs to be. But it is not impossible. You can write without a plan if you want to rewrite and revise and restructure many times over. But it is much more sensible, more efficient and decidedly less stressful to think about how you will structure the piece—be it advertising copy or a magazine article—before you begin writing. Some media forms have their own internal structure and provide a kind of template you can use. Basic news stories are like that. So are press releases. Advertising copy also often follows a certain pattern. But even if the template is provided, you need to organize your thoughts and your material within it. And so, determined to write well, you sit with the material, review everything, scribble notes to yourself, look up missing details, perhaps make a few phone calls. You don't rush to write. You take the time to understand the material. From that understanding can come good ideas about how to structure the piece.

How should you organize? For short pieces, you may be able to keep everything in your head. But most writers who know what they're doing don't trust this method. They depend on notes. Some do fine with key words and phrases scribbled on scraps of paper. Others prefer writing full outlines. Some use the computer to organize, putting their notes into a database that's accessible, and sortable, in countless ways. Others like to use file cards, one idea to a card, which can be shuffled and reshuffled as the writer thinks through the piece.

Secret #4: Consider Your Audience

Unlike your journal or the e-mails you send to friends, media messages are meant for public consumption. But what public? How can you write well if you don't know who will be reading or listening? You can't—or at the very least you stack the deck against it. If you don't know the audience, you are not sure what your readers or viewers or listeners know or need to know. You are not sure how to approach these folks, what level of vocabulary to employ, what tone to choose, how to structure what you want to say. Should you use humor? Will irony work? Who knows—if you don't know your audience.

That's why companies fund market research: to see who is out there and how best to reach them. That's why magazines conduct readership studies or run surveys to gauge what their readers think about certain issues. Knowing the audience is a key to good writing.

Secret #5: Know Grammatical Conventions and How to Use Them

Here we are, back to the rules of the game. Note that knowing the rules becomes important only when you have something to say, have figured out how you're going to say it, and know to whom you're talking. The rules themselves—memorizing verb forms or knowing when to use a comma—don't exist without a context. The context is writing. You learn the rules for one reason: to play the game.

Writing well means making countless good decisions, from choosing just the right word (see #6) to crafting phrases and clauses and sentences and paragraphs that say just what you want them to say, with precision, clarity and grace (see #7). This lofty but achievable goal is possible only if you understand the architecture of language, the building blocks of prose, if you are at ease with the tools of the trade. Imagine a carpenter who can't use a skill saw, a dancer who doesn't know the steps, a programmer who can't write code. That's a writer without a command of grammar.

Secret #6: Master a Solid Working Vocabulary

Sculptors have clay; painters have paint; writers have words. It's as simple as that. Writers have to figure out how to connect with an audience—how to inform, educate, entertain, tell a story, set a scene, promote a product, sell an idea—and all they have are words. But words are some of the most potent tools around, perhaps *the* most potent. What variety, what nuance, what tone! Words carry not only meaning but shades of meaning. Look up *talk* in a thesaurus and you will find *chatter*, *mutter*, *mumble*, *gossip* and *schmooze*, each with its own connotation, each with its own feel. And words not only have meaning and nuance but also sound and rhythm.

Building a good vocabulary means reading widely. It means both appreciating the smorgasbord that is the English language and learning to use words with proper respect—that is, choosing the correct word, the word that means exactly what *you* mean, and spelling it correctly. Building a vocabulary does not mean seeking out multisyllabic tongue twisters or collecting fancy or elaborate expressions. It means being able to use words like *chatter*, *mutter*, *mumble*, *gossip* and *schmooze* when called for.

Secret #7: Focus on Precision and Clarity

If you think clear, crisp writing just flows naturally from the fingertips of the writer to the computer screen, you couldn't be more wrong. Writing with precision and clarity—saying exactly what you mean, no fuzziness, no confusion, no second or third reading necessary—is hard, purposeful work. But it's work your readers, viewers or listeners expect you to do. If you don't, they click “next” or turn the page or reach for the remote, and whatever you had to say, whatever you thought you were communicating, is lost.

Clear, powerful writing is the result of good decisions, from choosing the right word to crafting just the right construction to relentlessly slashing clutter from your prose. Redundancies? Euphemisms? Jargon? These are obstacles to precision. Misplaced modifiers? Split constructions? Run-on sentences? These are the enemies of clarity. In fact, every grammatical decision you make either enhances or detracts from clarity. That's how important a working knowledge of grammar is to writing well. That's how careful you must learn to be if you want to write clearly and crisply.

Secret #8: Hear Language

“Write for the ear,” broadcasters are often told, but this is good advice for *all* writers. It doesn't matter whether the audience actually hears aloud the words you write or just “hears” your prose when reading silently. In either case, the audience attends to the sound and feels the beat. If you can master the skill of writing for the ear, you are one step closer to writing well.

Listen to the words you use. What meaning is conveyed by their sound? Listen to how words sound together. Do they fight one another? Do they flow? Say your written sentences out loud. Do they have a rhythm? A long sentence can lilt. A short sentence can tap out a staccato beat. Purposeful repetition of words or phrases can add rhythm, as can the emphatic use of parallel structure. Mastering the aural nuances and subtleties of language is one of the joys of writing.

Secret #9: Revise

Think you're finished once you write it all down? Think all you have to do is a quick once-over, a spell check and it's out the door? Think again. Having the patience and fortitude—and humility—to *really* revise is

more than tidying up, pruning and polishing prose. It is an opportunity to see if the writing works. It is a chance to rethink what you are trying to say. Consider the word *revision*: *re-vision* means *to look again, to look with new eyes*. This is what the revision process should be.

And so thoughtful writers, determined to produce clear, powerful, even memorable prose, take a deep breath after they have “finished” whatever it is they were writing. Now it is time to look at the piece and ask: Does it say what I intended it to say? Will my readers or viewers or listeners learn what I want them to learn? Have I written enough or too much? Do the ideas flow from one to another? Do my transitions work? Does my style fit both the subject and the audience? Taking revision seriously means asking the tough questions and being prepared to spend the extra time to answer them.

Even with the best intentions, it is very difficult to learn the art of revision on your own work. You *know* what you mean even if you don’t *write* what you mean. Thus, when you read your own work, you read what you know you meant and not necessarily what you have written. It may be that learning how to revise is best accomplished by revising others’ writing. It is much easier to see the shortcomings of other people’s work, the holes in their logic, the sputtering of their prose, the clutter, the murkiness. It is also true that you often see in others your own problems or shortcomings. With practice and over time, if you stay humble and audience-directed, you can learn to be more clear-eyed about your work.

Secret #10: Apply the Seat of the Pants to the Seat of the Chair

The final secret to writing well is the easiest to state and the hardest to accomplish: Put in the time. Just like mastering a musical instrument or a new sport, learning to write takes practice—lots of practice. This means time—good, concentrated, focused time over weeks and months and, yes, even years. Some people seem to have a natural facility with words (probably because they are voracious readers). Others struggle more. But everyone who wants to write well, talent notwithstanding, has to work hard at it. It is easy to get discouraged. It is easy to get distracted. It is easy to talk away your enthusiasm over mochaccinos with friends. Sometimes it feels as if it’s easy to do just about anything *other* than write. You have to rein yourself in. Give yourself a pep talk. Head back to your desk. As the poet Marge Piercy has wisely written, “A real writer is one who really writes.”

GRAMMAR IS EVERYWHERE

We wanted to make the case for writing before we got serious about making the case for grammar. We wanted you to have a reason to care about grammar. Okay, you don't have to feel warm and fuzzy about it, but you do have to attend to it. You do have to master it if you want to write well. The good news is that grammar is not rocket science. True, the English language can be challenging. And yes, there is much to learn on the way to mastering the rules that govern how we write. But there is no reason to be intimidated. We human beings are prewired to do this kind of work. Communication is our claim to fame, evolutionarily speaking. We're good at this. It's just that those of us who want to be writers have to be *very* good at this.

That's where grammar comes in. Grammar makes communication possible. Without the shared conventions of grammar, without the structure it creates and the patterns it plots, we could not speak to one another across time and space. Grammar is the writer's touchstone. It binds us together whether we write journal entries or journalism, haiku or hypertext, whether our book is number one on the New York Times best-seller list or we have just registered for our first writing class.

We know that grammar has a bad rap: It's confusing. It's picky. It's fussy. There are almost as many exceptions as there are rules. And it's, well, *unnecessary*, isn't it? "I never learned grammar in school, but it hasn't hurt me yet," you say. "I don't bother with grammar when I text message or IM, and no one seems to care—or even notice. Besides," you say, "I can always write around what I don't know. It's the ideas that count, not the grammar," you declare.

Sorry. Wrong on all counts.

First of all, grammar is not all that confusing. In fact, it is mostly logical and orderly, often commonsensical and very accessible (that's right: not rocket science). Most of the rules are straightforward, and, happily, good grammar almost always *sounds right* to those who read and have the patterns of prose embedded in their brains. Second, grammar is absolutely necessary, not only to writing clearly but also to writing with style and creativity and pizzazz.

Consider this comment from journalist, essayist, novelist and screenwriter Joan Didion, one of the finest prose stylists writing today: "All I know about grammar is its infinite power," she writes. "To shift the structure of a sentence alters the meaning of that sentence, as definitely and inflexibly as the position of a camera alters the meaning of

the object photographed. Many people know about cameras today, but not so many know about sentences.”

But we *must* know about sentences, about phrases, clauses, voices, tenses, singulars, plurals—all the patterns and constructions that make our language work. Language is how we spread ideas and information throughout society. The information we have to communicate as writers may be complex; the ideas may be challenging. The message will have to compete with countless distractions for the attention of the audience. This puts a tremendous burden on the language: It must be crisp and clear, easy to understand and inviting. It must carry the ideas effortlessly, even gracefully. It must enhance meaning. It must communicate tone and nuance, color and texture, sound and rhythm. But to do all this, the language must be—before all else—correct. It must be grammatical.

All languages depend on rules of grammar, although these conventions may not be entirely evident to outsiders. Nonstandard English defies many of the rules of conventional English, but it has patterns of its own, linguistic conventions that guide its use. So too does sign language, where grammar occurs in the eyes, the brows, the tilt of the head, the lips. Just as sentence construction communicates meaning in written English, a tucked chin, narrowed eyes or raised shoulders act as grammatical signposts in the language of the deaf. Even baby talk has its own simple grammar (“Me want milk!”).

Face it: Grammar is everywhere.

MAKING MISTAKES

.....

What is exciting and challenging about learning to write well is that it is a lifelong process. Throughout our lives as writers, we will grow, we will change and, inevitably, we will make mistakes: judgments miscalled, questions unasked and language misused. Errors can be disheartening, not to mention embarrassing.

Grammatical errors are particularly dangerous to the professional lives of writers. “If I see a misspelled word on a résumé or a grammatical error, I look no further. I immediately disqualify the applicant,” says the personnel director of a large company. “We look at how much attention a person pays to detail,” says the vice president of a major advertising firm. “Things like grammar, spelling and mechanics mean a lot to us. We figure, if the person can’t accomplish these things, how

can we expect him or her to move on to bigger jobs?” Says a newspaper editor: “If I find grammatical and mechanical errors in the first paragraph, I stop reading. If a person can’t use grammar correctly, it says either of two things to me—lack of intelligence or extreme sloppiness. Either way, it’s not the person I want writing for me.” A magazine editor agrees: “We get hundreds of e-mail queries from writers proposing stories for us. For some reason, people think it’s okay to write poorly when they write an e-mail. We don’t think so at all. We would never hire a writer freelance if that person e-mailed us a query with grammatical or spelling errors. And it’s amazing how many of them do.”

But mistakes do happen. It is precisely because professional writers know this—and understand the unpleasant consequences of making errors publicly—that they take *editing* so seriously. They begin with a solid understanding of the language and then they edit, edit, edit. Misspelled words, misplaced modifiers, lack of parallelism, shifts in voice—all the little errors that can creep into writing never make it past the editing process. It is here that experienced writers turn their uncertain, sometimes ragged prose into the polished material they can proudly present to their audience.

WHAT YOU DON’T KNOW . . .

Do you know the expression, “What you don’t know won’t hurt you”? Forget it. What you don’t know *will* hurt you when it comes to grammar. What you don’t know will hurt the clarity of your writing, the understanding and respect of your audience, even your ability to land a job in the first place. What is it you don’t know? Let’s consider 10 of the most common grammatical mistakes and how knowledge of the language (and reading this book) can help you avoid them.

Mistake #1: Thinking you don’t have to know grammar to write well. After reading our masterfully persuasive arguments in these first two chapters, you’re not likely to make this mistake again, right?

Mistake #2: Subjects and verbs that don’t agree. For a sentence to be grammatically correct and clearly communicative, a verb must agree with the intended number of its subject. That sounds

simple, as in: *The book* [singular subject] *is* [singular verb] *in the library* or *The books* [plural subject] *are* [plural verb] *on the reading list*. But it gets complicated when you're not quite sure what the subject is. There may be a number of nouns and pronouns in the sentence. Which is the true subject? *A box of books are/is on the table*. Is *box* (singular) the subject or is *books* (plural)? There may be confusion about the intended number of the subject. *Five thousand dollars*, as a subject, looks plural but acts singular; *everyone*, as a subject, clearly implies the plural but acts as a singular subject. To sort this all out, you need to know the parts of speech (Chapters 3 and 4), the parts of a sentence (Chapter 5) and the guidelines for agreement (Chapter 6).

Mistake #3: Subjects and pronouns that don't agree. To communicate crisply and clearly, sentences must have internal harmony. Just as subjects and verbs must agree, so too must subjects and their pronouns. Adhering to this straightforward rule depends on your ability to identify the subject, recognize its number and choose a corresponding pronoun. This can be simple, as in: *The books* [plural subject] *and their* [plural pronoun] *authors*. Or it can be tougher, as in: *Everyone should remain in (their/his or her) seat* or *The team made (their/its) way to the locker room*. But if you understand the parts of speech (Chapters 3 and 4) and the guidelines for agreement (Chapter 6), you should be able to avoid this pitfall.

Mistake #4: Lack of parallelism. To be both coherent and forceful, a sentence must have parallel structure; that is, its elements must be symmetrical. Consider a construction like *I came. I saw. I conquered*. It is powerful because it sets out three ideas in three parallel grammatical structures (pronoun–past-tense verb). Consider the same idea expressed this way: *I came. I looked over everything. The enemy was conquered by my armies*. That's lack of parallelism. That's bad writing. You have to know the parts of speech (Chapters 3 and 4) to understand the concept of parallelism, and you must see parallelism as a form of agreement (Chapter 6).

Mistake #5: Confusing *who* and *whom*. *Who/whom did the president name to his cabinet? She voted for whoever/whomever endorsed the treaty. The judge who/whom tried the case refused to speak with reporters*. Confused? You won't be once you understand the nominative and objective cases (Chapter 7).

Mistake #6: Confusing *that* and *which*. Did you think these two words were interchangeable? Well, they aren't. Consider this sentence: *The readership poll that/which the magazine commissioned helped shape editorial policy.* *That* is used to introduce material that restricts the meaning of the noun; *which* is used to elaborate on meaning. If you know about relative pronouns (Chapter 4) and the role of phrases and clauses in a sentence (Chapter 5), you will use these words correctly.

Mistake #7: Confusing possessives and contractions. That's a fancy way of saying that *your* (possessive) and *you're* (contraction) are not interchangeable. They perform very different tasks in a sentence. *Their* and *they're*, *whose* and *who's*, *its* and *it's* may sound the same, but they do not have the same grammatical functions. If you are a text messenger, you may be accustomed to omitting apostrophes (some cell phone keypads don't have this function), keypunching in *its* for both *its* (the possessive, as in *the book and its author*) and *it's* (a contraction, as in *it's an important book*). You may use *yr* or *ur* for *your* (possessive) or *you're* (contraction). These are habits you'll have to break. Learning parts of speech (Chapter 4) and case (Chapter 7) will help you make the distinction between possessives and contractions and end the confusion.

Mistake #8: Dangling and misplacing modifiers. A misplaced modifier (a word, phrase or clause) does not point clearly and directly to what it is supposed to modify. A modifier "dangles" when what it is supposed to modify is not part of the sentence. Both grammatical errors seriously compromise clarity of meaning. If you understand parts of speech (Chapters 3 and 4) and parts of the sentence (Chapter 5), this clarity, conciseness and coherence issue (Chapter 10) will make sense.

Mistake #9: Misusing commas. Some novice writers just don't take commas seriously enough, sprinkling them throughout sentences like decoration, figuring "when in doubt, put one in." Texters and IMers, on the other hand, eschew commas entirely. But commas have specific functions in a sentence, as do all marks of punctuation. In addition to generally overusing or underusing commas, writers frequently fall prey to two specific comma errors. One is neglecting to use a comma to separate two independent clauses linked by a coordinating conjunction. The other is using *only* a comma when trying to link two independent clauses (known as the *comma-splice error*). If some of this terminology is foreign to you, it won't be after you read about parts of speech (Chapter 4), the sentence (Chapter 5) and punctuation (Chapter 8).

Mistake #10: The dreaded passive voice. Do you know what the passive voice is? You will, after reading about it in Chapter 5. It is one of the surest ways to suck the life out of a sentence and construct stilted, falsely formal or bureaucratic prose. Although passive voice construction is not technically a grammatical error and although there are a few defensible reasons for using it, most passive-voice sentences are not written knowingly or purposefully. Both the clarity (Chapter 10) and the liveliness (Chapter 11) of writing are at stake.

All these grammatical hazards—we could list dozens more—may seem daunting. Don't be daunted. Be respectful. Understand that language is alive, complex, fascinating—and full of potential pitfalls. That doesn't mean you should be intimidated. It means you should be careful. It means you should learn the tools of your trade. It means you should study the fundamentals and build a writing life from this firm foundation. “When Words Collide” can help.

THE POINT OF GRAMMAR

As you read this book, always keep in mind that the point of grammar is *not* grammar. The point is writing. Grammar is only the road map. The destination is clear, concise, compelling prose. You learn the rules not so you can parrot the rules, not so you can be an expert on the rules, not so you can pass a test on the rules, but so you can play the game. The game is writing. Don't ever lose sight of *why* you're learning grammar, why you're learning the rules—and why you're reading this book.

The study of grammar is the key to the power of words. Read on. Write on.

Parts of Speech, Part 1: The Verb Is THE Word

This chapter begins an important creative journey into the land of crisp, clean, grammatical prose. Like many trips, it might look formidable, but it is actually just a series of steps, taken one at a time. The first step—and it’s a big one—is learning parts of speech, the building blocks we use to construct sentences.

Understanding parts of speech is essential to your mastery of grammar and your growth as a writer. With only eight parts of speech to consider, mastery is within your grasp.

We begin with the verb. It is so important, so vital, to sentence construction that we devote the entire chapter to it. In Chapter 4, we will deal with noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection.

THE VERB: POWER TO THE SENTENCE

The *word*. That’s what *verb* means in Latin, and that very definition reveals its power and its function. The verb is at the core of all writing: It propels, it positions, it pronounces.

A sentence goes nowhere without a verb. In fact, you don’t have a sentence without a verb. As Chapter 5 will tell you, a sentence is a group of words that expresses a complete thought. At a minimum it contains a **subject** (a starting point for the thought) and a **verb** (which provides the power), as in

Howard screamed.
(subject) (verb)

This would not be a sentence:

All of the doughnuts and candy.

Why? Those six words contain an image but not a complete thought. There is neither a subject nor verb among them. It's not a sentence but a *phrase*—a group of related words that doesn't contain a verb. With a subject and a verb, that partial thought becomes complete. It becomes a sentence:

The dog ate all of the doughnuts and candy.
(subject) (verb)

The verb is at the heart of all our writing. It focuses, it directs, it commands. Let's examine this powerful tool.

VERB FUNCTIONS

In most writing, a verb states an *action* or *effort*:

The hurricane struck the coast with great fury.

Relief workers arrived at the disaster scene in five hours.

A verb also can indicate a *state of being*:

Twenty thousand coastal residents are homeless tonight.

In all three examples, the verb drives or directs the sentence. Note how the absence of those verbs takes away the power and direction of those sentences.

VERB FORMS

The three sentence examples in “Verb Functions” illustrate the three forms of verbs: *transitive*, *intransitive* and *linking*. Understanding these forms is key to making correct choices as to case (Chapter 7), to preventing the use of an adverb where an adjective belongs and to avoiding errors with such troublesome verb pairs as *lay/lie* and *sit/set*.

There are many more reasons to understand them, as you will soon discover.

1. **Transitive verb.** In Latin, *trans* means “through” or “across.” Therefore, the transitive verb carries *action* from the subject to an object, as in:

The hurricane struck the coast.
 (subject) (verb) (direct object)
 (*trans.*)

Note that a transitive verb is always followed by a *direct object*—the recipient of the verb’s action. When you can answer the question “what?” or “whom?” after a verb (as in “struck what?”), you have a direct object. Another example:

The president named Thompson to direct relief efforts.

(Named **whom?**) *Thompson* is the direct object of the transitive verb *named*.

Transitive verbs are considered the most action-oriented of verbs, although our next form—intransitive—has plenty of drive.

2. **Intransitive verb.** As the prefix *in-* suggests, this verb form is *not* transitive. Although there is no recipient of any action from this type of verb, sentences with intransitive verbs do convey action as well as a sense of *location*. Example:

Relief workers arrived at the disaster scene.
 (subject) (verb)
 (*intrans.*)

(Arrived **where?**) The prepositional phrase “at the disaster scene” helps to provide the location.

Note that in intransitive verb constructions, the words following the verb don’t answer the question *what?*; they generally reply to *where*, *how* or *when*. So intransitive verbs do not take direct objects. And as will be fully explained in Chapters 4 and 5, these verbs are generally followed by prepositional phrases or adverbs. Another example:

The hurricane struck suddenly.

(Struck **how?**) *Suddenly*, an adverb, establishes that condition.

3. **Linking verb.** This verb form may seem weak compared with its transitive and intransitive cousins, but it has an important role in *linking* the subject with a modifier, which enhances the meaning or description of that subject. Example:

Twenty thousand residents are homeless.
 (subj.) (verb)(predicate adjective)
 (*linking*)

The most common verb in these linking constructions is a form of *to be*—as in *is, are, was, were*, and so on.

This verb form can also link a noun to its subject:

Tom Bradley is the new president of overstateverything.com.
 (subj.) (l. v.) (noun)
 (The noun *president* is an identification for Tom Bradley. So the verb *is* conveys no action; it indicates a state of being.)

Note that linking verbs connect only nouns, pronouns and adjectives—not adverbs—back to the subject. So this sentence would *not* be correct:

The corpse smells badly.
 (subj.) (verb) (adverb)

By definition, the adverb *badly* can characterize (modify) only a verb, an adjective or another adverb. Because a corpse has no sense of smell, you can't modify this verb. And there are no adjectives or adverbs to modify. So this sentence requires an adjective for the linking verb *smelled* (not all linking verbs are *to be* constructions, though they all indicate a state of being), as in:

The corpse smells bad.
 (subj.) (l. v.) (adj.)
 (Put another way, the corpse has a bad smell.)

Here are some common linking verbs that are not *to be* constructions:

appear	become	feel	get	grow	look
remain	seem	smell	sound	taste	turn

Some verbs can be used correctly in all three verb forms, which is a good device for understanding the forms' differences:

“I smell a rat here,” the mayor told the council.
 (verb)
 (*Smell* is a transitive verb—the direct object *rat* follows it. Note that the question *what?* is answered.)

The diner told the chef that the pasta smelled like dirty laundry.
(verb)

(*Smelled* is an intransitive verb; there is no object, just a prepositional phrase following *smelled*, to answer the question *how?*)

Now back to that decomposing body:

The bullet-riddled corpse smelled bad.
(verb)

(*Smelled* is a linking verb—it connects *corpse* to *bad*, noun to adjective. It has no recipient of action, just a description.)

Now that we have examined the form and function of verbs, let's look at several other aspects: number, tense, principal parts, voice and mood.

VERB NUMBER

Agreement ensures that the number of the verb (singular or plural) is consistent with the number of the subject of the sentence. (You'll enjoy an extensive discussion of this in Chapter 6.) This can be troublesome because it is not always easy to identify the true subject of the sentence. Look at the following sentences, all of which contain agreement errors:

The cause for the three deadly fires have yet to be discovered.
(The true subject is the singular noun *cause*; the subject is not always the closest word to the verb!)

Two thousand bushels are a lot of wheat.
(In some cases, units of measurement [tons, liters, bushels] are seen as singular entities.)

Among the many reasons for these two financial collapses are the growing sense of investor distrust.
(The true subject here is the singular noun *sense*; don't be fooled by prepositional phrases!)

More on this soon. For now, remember this simple rule: *A verb must agree with its subject in number.* Your assignment: Find the true subject!

VERB TENSE

We use verbs to reflect time. Verbs change slightly to reflect present, past, future, ongoing action or states of being, as in these examples:

The committee reviews the trade legislation today.
(present tense)

The committee reviewed the bill yesterday.
(past tense)

The committee will review the trade bill tomorrow.
(future tense)

The committee is reviewing the bill in conference room 20.
(present progressive/present participle)

The committee has reviewed the trade legislation.
(present perfect/past participle)

There are several more tenses and combinations, but you get the idea. It is important to keep tenses “in step,” or parallel. Changing tenses unnecessarily creates confusion. We examine parallel structure in Chapter 6.

Next we look at a number of verbs that change more radically than most “normal” or *regular* ones, as we examine principal parts.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

A verb has four principal parts: the *to* infinitive form to establish its root (as an indicator of the present) and three tenses—past, present participle and past participle. Consider the regular verb *appear*: Its infinitive form is *to appear*. (We discuss the infinitive in the section on verbals later in this chapter.) If a verb is regular, its past tense and past participle form have an *-ed* ending, and its present participle form an *-ing* ending. Examples:

The team appeared to lose all its confidence.
(past tense)

She has appeared in 200 consecutive performances.
(past participle)

The playwright is appearing to make a major breakthrough.
(present participle)

Our language, however, has many exceptions to this rule (surprise, eh?). The following is a brief list of frequently used irregular verbs; note how the forms change, sometimes dramatically.

Infinitive	Past Tense	Past Participle	Present Participle
to arise	arose	(has) arisen	(is) arising
to begin	began	begun	beginning
to choose	chose	chosen	choosing
to fly	flew	flown	flying
to lay	laid	laid	laying
to lie	lay	lain	lying
to ring	rang	rung	ringing
to rise	rose	risen	rising
to set	set	set	setting
to sit	sat	sat	sitting
to steal	stole	stolen	stealing
to write	wrote	written	writing

When in doubt about a form of a particular verb, consult your trusty dictionary, which usually lists (at least) the past tense and past participle.

THE “VOICE” OF VERBS

A verb not only conveys action; it also has a “voice.” We discuss this in Chapter 5. For now, be aware that voice can be either active or passive. Active voice has more power. Examples:

The governor vetoed the budget bill.

(Active—action moves from transitive verb to direct object, from *vetoed* to *bill*.)

The budget bill was vetoed this morning.

(Passive—although you can infer that it was the governor who vetoed the bill, the initiator of the action is not disclosed in this sentence form.)

In most cases, we prefer the active voice because it tends to be more clear, more crisp, more complete.

THE “MOOD” OF VERBS

Verbs also have moods. Verbs are *indicative* when they convey a fact or question. They are *imperative* when they issue a command of sorts, and they are *subjunctive* when they convey some information that is actually contrary to fact.

We have two more areas to discuss. Then we can move on to the rest of the parts of speech in Chapter 4. Let’s first look at “false verbs,” or *verbals*.

VERBALS: LOVING TO FOOL YOU

What looks like a verb but doesn’t have the horsepower to drive a sentence? It is the simple noun or adjective (and occasional adverb), but the way it is embedded in a phrase often suggests a strength it simply doesn’t have. To make things even worse, linguists refer to such a construction as a *verbal*—as if it is a first cousin to a verb, which allows it to have a driver’s license!

A verbal is classified as a gerund, participle or infinitive. It can be the subject of a sentence, it can be a direct object or it can modify a noun or pronoun to add description. But it can never, ever, act as a verb.

1. **Gerunds.** These verbals, which always have an *-ing* ending, have the feel of action but serve only as the subject or object in a sentence:

Swimming is a healthy, low-impact exercise.
(gerund as subj.)

You can see that *swimming* actually represents an activity, not an action. It cannot carry the requirements of a complete sentence. If you dropped the linking verb *is* from the previous sentence, you would have a *sentence fragment*, in reality just a phrase:

Swimming, a healthy, low-impact exercise.

Now here’s a pair of gerunds that serves as the object of a transitive verb:

She really enjoys swimming and weightlifting.
(verb) (gerunds as direct objects)

Remember that *gerunds are always nouns*. They act in the sentence the same way that nouns do (see p. 31). Because the gerund also appears as the present tense of the verb with an *-ing* ending, it is sometimes confused with another verbal, the participle.

2. **Participles.** These verbals have either an *-ing* or *-ed* ending and are always *adjectives*. As an adjective (see p. 35), the participle generally will modify (give extra meaning to) a noun or a pronoun. Examples:

Hoisting her protest sign high above her head, the
(participle)

demonstrator marched defiantly toward city hall.
(subj.) (verb)

Hoisting is part of the phrase that adds information about *demonstrator*, the subject of the sentence. In this role *hoisting* modifies a noun. The essential action of this sentence is the subject–verb combination, *demonstrator marched*.

Hoisted above the surf by the powerful thermals, she guided
(participle) (subj.) (verb)

her hang glider past the dangerous cliffs.
(obj.)

Hoisted describes the condition of the subject *she*, a pronoun. As Chapter 5 explains, the introductory words in the previous sentence constitute a participial phrase. You’ll see that using an introductory phrase that is too long keeps the reader from the key ingredients in any sentence—the subject and the verb. But we’re getting ahead of ourselves!

3. **Infinitives.** These are verbals that are formed by *to* plus (in most cases) the present tense of a verb. Infinitives generally are easy to identify; their place as a part of speech (noun, adjective or adverb), however, is not always so easy to determine. Let’s look at three examples:

The candidate needs to win.
(subj.) (verb) (infinitive)

In this sentence *to win* is a noun, the object of the transitive verb *needs*. The object *to win* answers the question *what?* As an object it works as a noun in this sentence:

“This is the way to win,” the candidate told her supporters.
(subj.)(verb) (obj.)(infin.) (verb)

The infinitive *to win* modifies the noun *way*. A noun’s modifier is always an adjective. There are only two verbs in this sentence: *is* and *told*.

The controversial candidate is desperate to win.
(subj.) (l. v.)(adj.) (infin.)

To win modifies the adjective *eager*, so by definition the infinitive acts as an adverb. (Remember our discussion about the adjective that follows the linking verb and relates to the noun?) See p. 38 for information about adverbs.

These, then, are our three verbals. Remember that a verbal is not a verb. (You can walk like a duck and talk like a duck, but that doesn't mean you're a duck!) Verbals are only nouns, adjectives or adverbs.

A final thought before we wade into the remaining parts of speech in Chapter 4: If you recognize verbs and use them well, you have a powerful tool at your disposal. You are on your way. If you understand that a phrase has no verbs and that a clause does, you are on your way to solid sentence construction. If you know that this one word

Stop!

is not only a verb, but also a complete sentence, and if you agree that

a stop sign swaying in a brisk Midwestern breeze

has no verb and is just a simple phrase, you are ready to move on.

Got it?

Go!

Parts of Speech, Part 2: Completing the Picture

Verbs are communication powerhouses, which means they have to power something. Imagine this verb-only dialogue:

“Sang.”

“Applauded.”

“Celebrated.”

When you bring in the other parts of speech to our communication, we learn more. We get a complete picture:

Renee Thomas **sang** a technically difficult aria with great ease.

An enthusiastic audience **applauded** with appreciation and admiration.

She **celebrated** with a loud “yahoo!”

As Chapter 3 pointed out, our sentences are crafted in sections—and word by word. The *sang-applauded-celebrated* sentences use all eight parts of speech (even the interjection *yahoo!*) to add character, description and context. Yes, we also need nouns (*audience*), pronouns (*she*), adjectives (*enthusiastic*), adverbs (*technically*), prepositions (*with*), and conjunctions (*and*) to organize and present our thoughts.

WHY WE FOCUS ON PARTS OF SPEECH

How will a solid understanding of parts of speech help you master the challenges of grammar? Here are several examples:

- Proper recognition of a verb helps you distinguish a *phrase* from a *clause*. As Chapter 5 will point out, a phrase does *not* contain a verb. A clause, however, *does* contain a verb. Therefore, a construction such as:

the dark, windswept ocean sky

is neither a clause nor a complete sentence; it is a phrase composed of several adjectives and one noun. It has no verb and cannot stand alone. It becomes a clause with the insertion of an “action” word:

The dark, windswept ocean sky warns us of a rainy day.

Now we have a clause and, because this one can stand independently, a complete thought. We have a verb. We have a sentence.

- Identifying a sentence’s subject prevents errors in subject–verb agreement. Not all nouns are subjects of a sentence, as in this example:

The rate of automobile *thefts* is startling.

(singular subject)	(singular verb)
-----------------------	--------------------

As you will see in Chapters 5 and 6, the noun *thefts*—the object of the preposition *of*—cannot be the subject of a sentence. It helps to recognize prepositions!

- Proper recognition of how a pronoun functions in a sentence helps you to correctly select the case of a pronoun (Chapter 6). For example, a decision about the use of *I* or *me* in the following sentence requires that you understand what prepositions and pronouns do:

Everyone except Tom and me attended the annual banquet.

preposition (has an object)	pronoun (object of the prep.)
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

Get the point? These are just a few of the many good examples that show why understanding parts of speech is so critical to understanding grammar.

NOUNS

.....

You may recall from elementary school that a *noun* can be a person, place or thing and that it can appear in many parts of a sentence. For example, the following words are nouns:

integrity

Senator Phoghorn (called a proper noun)

collecting

terrorism

company's

These are not action words, but they can be the activators or receivers of some action from a verb. Because a noun is such a common component of a sentence, it has many roles:

1. As the **subject** of a sentence:

Integrity seems to be an elusive trait in business today.

2. As the **direct object** of a transitive verb:

The president named Senator Phoghorn to the Honesty in Government Committee.

3. As the **predicate nominative** of a linking verb:

His favorite pastime is collecting old hubcaps.
(remember the gerund?)

4. As the **object of a preposition**:

Your editorial about terrorism was quite convincing.

5. As a **possessive or modifier** of another noun:

The company's stock is in trouble.

You'll find that recognizing and properly using nouns will help you to make correct decisions about agreement (Chapter 6) and case (Chapter 7).

PRONOUNS

Like an eager understudy, a *pronoun* stands in for a noun. Also known as a *noun substitute*, a pronoun adds flexibility and variety to a sentence by not restating the earlier noun.

Pronouns can be more confusing to use than nouns, however. Some of the most common grammatical problems relate to the use of pronouns in such areas as antecedent agreement (Chapter 6), case (Chapter 7) and selecting the proper pronoun to introduce a dependent clause (later in this chapter).

Let's first review these types of pronouns: personal, indefinite, relative and interrogative and demonstrative.

Types of Pronouns

1. **Personal pronoun.** The most common pronoun type, the personal pronoun, takes distinct forms in three cases: nominative (subjective), objective and possessive. (Case will be explained in Chapter 7.) To show you how different each pronoun is in its three cases, we'll review each one, from first-person singular to third-person plural:

Nominative	Objective	Possessive
I	me	my/mine
you	you	your/yours
he	him	his
she	her	her/hers
it	it	its
we	us	our/ours
you	you	your/yours
they	them	their/theirs

Because personal pronouns change their forms depending on their location in a sentence, it is important to be aware of these roles. Here is an example of three proper uses of *we*, which is a “first-person plural” pronoun:

We missed the early-morning flight.

(*We* is the subject—nominative case.)

Please send this report to us tomorrow.

(*Us* is the object of the preposition *to*—objective case.)

This is our opportunity to excel.
(*Our* modifies *opportunity*—possessive case.)

A timely note about *its* and *it's*

The personal possessive pronoun often lures an unnecessary apostrophe from the unwary writer. The most common problem is confusion between *its* and *it's*. Sadly, this error seems to be cropping up more frequently:

The stock market registered it's eighth straight loss of the month.
(Remember: *It's* means *It is!* This is called a subject-verb contraction. Personal pronouns in the possessive case do not require apostrophes.)

This is correct usage for *it's*:

It's going to be a frigid winter in the South.

Whereas *it's* and *your's* are incorrect pronouns, noun possessives do use an apostrophe, as in:

Tommy's record collection
(proper noun)

the nation's loss
(common noun)

So, here's a sentence that will either effectively illustrate this issue or propel you to further confusion (we hope it's the former):

It's evident that the company's decline has a great deal to do with
(It is) (possessive noun, needs apostrophe)

its relationship to unethical business practices.
(possessive pron., no apostrophe needed)

Got it? We hope so!

2. **Indefinite pronoun.** Because pronouns such as *anyone*, *enough*, *many*, *most*, *none* and *several* reveal little if anything about their gender or number, they can cause troublesome subject–verb and antecedent agreement problems. For now try to understand the *sense* of the sentence, so you can properly match subject, verb and *antecedent* (a previous word to which a pronoun refers).

The good news is that only a handful of indefinite pronouns can take either a singular or a plural verb, depending on the sense of the sentence. If the pronoun refers to what is a singular unit, the verb

will be singular. The plural connotation should be equally obvious in the construction. These indefinites include:

all most none some

Most of the shopping center is flooded.

Most of the passengers were rescued from the burning ship.

Some indefinite pronouns, such as *both*, *few*, *many* and *several*, are obviously plural:

Both of those cars are overpriced.

Indefinite pronouns and gender choice

Indefinite pronouns such as *anybody* and *somebody* can be vexing when it comes to gender identification—and they can cause awkward writing. So, which of the four choices of personal possessive pronouns is *correct*?

Anybody can enter his photograph in the competition.

Anybody can enter her photograph in the competition.

Anybody can enter his or her photograph in the competition.

Anybody can enter their photograph in the competition.

The only grammatically incorrect choice is *their*; “anybody” (any one person) is obviously singular, so you can’t connect a plural possessive pronoun to it. We prefer the most inclusive (and grammatically correct) choice: *anybody* . . . *his or her*. A writer also has the option of using the plural throughout, changing *anybody* to *people*.

3. **Relative and interrogative pronouns.** Pronouns such as *that*, *which* and *who* are easy to recognize, but they can be difficult to use properly. Examine the next four sentences and note the correct choices (underlined):

Who/Whom did the police arrest?

She is the type of leader that/who commands unwavering loyalty.

The aircraft carrier Stennis, that/which is now heading toward the Persian Gulf, is an intimidating spectacle.

This is one of those pens that/which write/writes over bacon grease.

Using these pronouns correctly requires an understanding of antecedent agreement, case, and restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses. Chapters 6, 7 and 8, respectively, deal with these topics. This, however, is an ideal point to cite a common error with relative pronouns—the use of *that* to avoid a *who/whom* selection:

The police officers that stopped my car were polite but firm.
(The correct pronoun choice is *who*.)

The candidate that the voters elected has been arrested for fraud.
(The correct pronoun is *whom*.)

Who or *whom*, rather than *that*, must be selected when the antecedent (in these cases, *officers* and *candidate*) is human or has human qualities. In an earlier sentence, the relative pronoun *that* correctly substituted for the noun *pens*.

Note that the relative pronoun *who* has a separate possessive form (remember the *it's/its* issue?). The possessive of *who* is *whose*—not the subject–verb contraction *who's* (*who is*). Consider this sentence:

Helen Thompson, a widow whose purse was snatched this
(possessive)
morning, has found a hero who's determined to make city
(*who is*—a subject–verb contraction)
streets safer.

4. **Demonstrative pronoun.** These pronouns are “pointers”—their specificity leaves little room for doubt. They include *this*, *that*, *these* and *those*. They can stand alone, as in:

This is a movie you do not want to miss.
(refers to a specific movie)

All of these demonstrative pronouns can be adjectives if they modify a noun rather than substituting for one. We turn to that colorful part of speech now.

ADJECTIVES

The *adjective* is a master of detail. It describes, limits and otherwise qualifies nouns and some pronouns. It cannot modify verbs; that is the realm of the adverb. Adjectives are sometimes called “picture words”

because they provide color and dimension. But like many aspects of writing, they can be overused and misapplied. Given their many nuances, adjectives challenge the writer to be on target with meaning and intent.

There are two types: descriptive and limiting.

Types of Adjectives

1. **Descriptive.** In adding detail, the descriptive adjective expands the meaning of a sentence and helps set a mood. Consider the differences in these two sentences (adjectives are underlined):

Rescue workers continued their search for hikers feared lost in a cave near the Cathedral National Monument.

Exhausted rescue workers continued their frantic search for the six youthful hikers feared lost in a flooded cave near the Cathedral National Monument.

Which sentence paints a fuller picture?

Skilled writers use adjectives carefully. They are concerned more with content than with flashiness. Adjectives, properly employed, don't add glitz or fluff; they provide information to create a more complete picture.

2. **Limiting.** Whereas the descriptive adjective is colorful and artistic, the limiting adjective is more spartan. In jeans parlance, if the descriptive adjective is designer label, the limiting adjective is plain pockets. This adjective sets boundaries and qualifies (limits) meaning. Note the use of *six* in the previous example about lost hikers. It limits because it is specific. Here's a related example:

The lost skiers had to hike 15 miles to reach help.

(The number *15* tells us specifically how far the skiers had to hike. Much can be inferred from this, though in this case the writer did not choose to add more descriptive detail, such as *tortuous* or *snow-clogged* miles.)

"This turnover cost us the game," the coach said sadly.

(*This*, which often can be a pronoun, becomes an adjective when it modifies a noun, such as *turnover*. Again, the adjective limits [focuses] the meaning of the sentence. The coach is referring to one specific turnover.)

Do you know any ways to improve your writing?

(Though the boundaries set here in specifying ways are very broad, *any* is seen as a limiting adjective because it provides no description or other helpful context. *Each* and *either* also fit into the category of limiting adjectives.)

Degrees of Adjectives

Many adjectives and adverbs have three forms that show degree, intensity or comparison. For example, the trio of

rich richer richest

moves from the *base* level (*rich*) to a *comparative* level (*richer*) and then to the *superlative* level (*richest*). Obviously, at the superlative level no higher comparison can be made.

Most adjectives take either the *-er* or *-est* suffix to indicate degree. Some, however, retain their base form and merely add the adverbs *more* and *most* to show a change in degree:

controversial more controversial most controversial

The use of *more* with an adjective in its comparative form, such as *richer*, creates a funny-sounding (and ungrammatical) construction: *more richer* (!). See further discussion of comparatives and superlatives later in this chapter in the section on adverbs.

The Predicate Adjective

An adjective that follows a linking verb is called a *predicate adjective*. It modifies the subject, which can be either a noun or a pronoun:

The company's advertising campaign is offensive.

(complete subj.)

(pred. adj.)

(*Offensive* is a predicate adjective. The verb *is* links the quality of being offensive to the noun *campaign*—hence, an *offensive campaign* [adjective modifying a noun].)

She is upset about the committee's decision.

(pronoun) (pred. adj.)

(The adjective describes the condition of the subject. This is one of few instances in which an adjective modifies a pronoun.)

Adjectives as Verbals

Two verbals, the participle and the infinitive (see p. 27), can be classified as adjectives. Whereas the participle is always an adjective, the infinitive is an adjective only when it modifies a noun. (An infinitive can also act as a noun or an adverb, depending on its role in a sentence.)

Running with a desperation that trumpeted his fear, the purse-snatcher could not elude his angry pursuers.

(*Running*, a participle, modifies the noun *purse-snatcher*. It acts as a descriptive adjective.)

The senator announced her decision to vote against the trade bill.

(The infinitive *to vote* modifies the noun *decision*; *to vote* characterizes or helps describe *decision*.)

ADVERBS

Although *adverbs* perform descriptive and limiting functions, their uses in sentences are far more complex. For example, an adverb can do all of the following:

- Modify a verb

The fire raced feverishly through the bone-dry forest.

(The adverb *feverishly* describes or modifies the verb *raced*; in this type of construction, an adverb often answers the question *how?*)

- Modify an adjective

My latte is really hot!

(*Really* modifies the predicate adjective *hot*; pardon the pun, but it states a degree.)

- Modify another adverb

The rock star formerly known as Roadkill took his concert review very badly.

(*Very* modifies the adverb *badly*, and together they modify the verb *took*; again, these adverbs answer the question *how?*)

- Introduce a sentence

Why do fools fall in love?

(*Why* is an interrogative adverb; it modifies the verb *fall*.)

- Connect two clauses

The jury agreed that the plaintiff was defamed; however, it awarded only \$1 in damages.

(Because it links two clauses that could stand alone, *however* is called a *conjunctive adverb*.)

Many adverbs end in *-ly*, but don't always count on that for proper identification. Examine a sentence carefully to be sure. *Slow* can be both an adjective and an adverb, depending on how it is used in a sentence, but *slowly* can be only an adverb.

In addition to selecting the most appropriate and descriptive adverbs for a sentence, writers should be concerned about the proper positioning of an adverb. Although an adverb can be moved to provide a change in emphasis, it's a good idea to position the adverb as closely as possible to the word it is supposed to modify. Position alters meaning, as in:

Only I love you.

or

I love you only.

Comparatives and Superlatives

An adverb can indicate a comparison between two units; it can also express the highest degree of quality among three or more units.

Here's an example of the adverbial comparative:

Prescription drug prices are rising faster than the Consumer Price Index.

(*Comparative*: Two items are being compared, through modification [degree] of the verb *are rising*.)

and its superlative:

Ohio's unemployment rate has risen the fastest of all Midwestern states.

(*Superlative*: There is no higher degree of comparison available.)

Be sure that your meaning is clear when you employ a comparative or superlative. Consider these errors:

High blood pressure is more dangerous than any chronic disease in the world today.

(Besides being an amazingly sweeping (and arguable) statement, this sentence implies that high blood pressure is also more pernicious than itself, because it too is a chronic disease. The last part of the sentence should read *than any other chronic disease in the world today.*)

This is the most unique piece of art I have ever seen.

(Certain words, called *absolutes*, defy comparisons. *Unique*, an absolute, is already a superlative. So are *perfect*, *excellent*, *impossible*, *final* and *supreme*.)

It suffices to say:

This is a unique piece of art.

There's more on this issue in the context of clarity and conciseness in Chapter 10.

PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are the quiet overachievers of sentence construction, and theirs is an important existence. *Prepositions* work with nouns and pronouns to create phrases and to link these phrases to the rest of a sentence, as in this construction of two prepositional phrases:

The judge sentenced Thompson to the Wycliffe State Penitentiary for the rest of his natural life.

and:

This announcement means a lot to you and me.

Like many other parts of speech, prepositions can have tightly focused meanings. Writers sometimes make the wrong choices with such prepositional pairs as *among/between*, *beside/besides*, *beneath/below*, *because of/due to* and *on/upon*. Part 2 of this book discusses the differences between these pairs.

The prepositions we most frequently use in our writing include:

at by for from in of on to with

Here is a brief list of the prepositions that we use less frequently (note that some are more than one word):

aboard	along	besides	into	since
about	among	between	like	through
above	around	beyond	near	throughout
according to	as far as	contrary to	next to	toward
across	because of	despite	out of	under
after	before	down	over	until
against	behind	during	past	within
ahead of	beside	inside	per	without

Prepositions link with nouns and pronouns to form *prepositional phrases*, as in *to you and me*. Remember that a pronoun must be in the objective case when it is the object of the preposition (nouns don't have an objective case change). So, it would *not* be correct to write (or say):

Between you and I, this marketing effort won't succeed.

The personal pronoun *I* changes to *me* in the objective case; the sentence should begin with:

Between you and me . . .

The same is true for such phrases as:

according to her for us to them

Indeed, prepositional phrases always have objects. The English poet John Donne understood this almost 400 years ago when he wrote:

“never send to know for whom the bell tolls . . .”

For more discussion of case, see Chapter 7.

In addition to proper selection of case, writers should pay attention to subject–verb agreement. Consider this sentence:

Each of these bicycles is custom-made.

(subj.) (prep. phrase) (l.v.)

Some writers are tempted to use a plural verb *are*, thinking that the noun *bicycles* is the subject of the sentence. It's not—*bicycles* is the object of the preposition, and that is the only role it has in this sentence.

Writers should also avoid excessive or unnecessary use of prepositions. Consider this bloated sentence (prepositional phrases underlined):

In the matter of your convention presentation, I think that it was rambling and confusing.

Using these prepositional phrases creates an unnecessary introduction. This sentence is more concise and direct:

I thought your convention presentation was rambling and confusing.

One final point about prepositions, long a part of grammatical lore: What is this business about not ending a sentence with a preposition? If it was good enough for the writer of the hit song “Devil with a Blue Dress On,” why can’t you end with *with*, *to* or *on*? We feel the same way about this as we do about cracking open fresh eggs with just one hand: Do it so long as you don’t make a mess. Scrambling a sentence to move around a preposition can sometimes be awkward:

This is a sentence up with which a good writer will not put.

You’re looking for clarity, right? Isn’t that what good writing is all about?

CONJUNCTIONS

Some cynics think that conjunctions are placed in a sentence to make it longer and more complicated—that is, the sentence will become so expansive that it will need a conjunction to bridge it. They are correct about the linking function of a conjunction, but they are off the mark about what kind of sentence is created with it. In fact, a conjunction can maintain rhythm and coherence, in addition to creating needed transitions of thought. Let’s examine how conjunctions work in sentences.

Coordinating and Subordinating Conjunctions

In its primary role, a *conjunction* coordinates (balances) clauses and phrases of equal weight. (For an in-depth discussion of clauses and phrases, see Chapter 5.) A *coordinating conjunction* can link two independent clauses, which could stand alone as separate sentences:

County commissioners approved the tax levy proposal, but they postponed a decision on an election date.

A coordinating conjunction can also link simple words and phrases that are combined to show a relationship:

She loves tofu and chocolate.

In a stressful situation, avoid jumping out of the frying pan and into the fire.

The most common coordinating conjunctions are:

and but for nor or yet while

When conjunctions are used to join clauses of unequal weight (that is, one clause clearly takes precedence and can stand by itself if necessary as a complete sentence), they are called *subordinating conjunctions*. They often are used to introduce some material or to provide context or counterpoint to the main part of the sentence:

Unless the negotiators can come to an agreement, the strike will begin at midnight.

I will cancel my appearance unless you can meet my contract demands.

The most common subordinating conjunctions are:

after although as as if before how
if since so through unless while

Pay careful attention to use of the subordinating conjunction *as if*. Be wary of substitutes; a common error is to use the preposition *like*:

It looks like it will snow today.

Remember that prepositions cannot link a clause—only a phrase or single word. In the previous sentence, a writer has two correct choices:

It looks as if it will snow today.

It looks like snow today.

Correlative Conjunctions

This group of conjunctions, operating in pairs, are called *correlative conjunctions* because they pair words, phrases and clauses to provide balance:

Our vacation was both refreshing and exhausting.

Neither the players nor the coach has met with the media.

(Note: In *either/or* and *neither/nor* constructions, the noun closest to the verb controls the number of the verb, as in *coach has . . .*)

The most common correlative conjunctions are:

both . . . and not only . . . but also
either . . . or whether . . . or
neither . . . nor

Adverbs That Look Like Conjunctions

Words such as *accordingly*, *consequently*, *however*, *moreover*, *nevertheless* and *therefore* appear to have linking qualities, but they are really adverbs inserted between two independent clauses to provide transition or a change in flow. For this reason they are called *conjunctive adverbs* (we hope that this label doesn't add to your confusion):

Our meeting lacks a quorum; therefore, we will adjourn until next Friday.

(See p. 110 about the use of a semicolon in this type of construction.)

INTERJECTIONS

.....

If a preposition is the most understated part of speech, the *interjection* is easily the most manic of this group. Also called the *exclamation*, it gives emotion and outburst to a sentence. It frequently stands alone and has its own punctuation, the exclamation mark:

Wow!

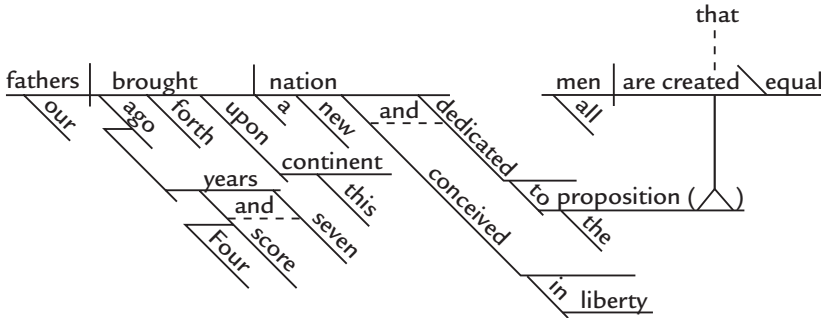
Oh my!

Whew!

Note that a sentence may have a concluding exclamation mark while not including an interjection:

Good luck with parts of speech!

The Sentence



What the heck is this, you are asking? (And will it be on the test?)

What you see above is a diagram of the first sentence of Lincoln’s Gettysburg Address, courtesy of master teacher and language gadfly Gene Moutoux. (You can see more at www.geocities.com/gene_moutoux.) The sentence reads, as we’re sure you remember: “Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent, a new nation, conceived in Liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal.”

Diagramming sentences used to be how elementary school kids learned the relationships between parts of speech and how to build grammatical sentences. Each word is placed on a line that represents its part of speech, with the lines drawn in ways that express the relationship between the words. It’s not as arcane as it looks. Some kids thought diagramming was as enjoyable as a trip to the orthodontist. Others thought it was, well, fun—like doing a crossword or Sudoku puzzle.

Would you venture a guess as to which group your esteemed authors belonged? That's right: We were diagramming geeks.

You will be delighted to know, however, that we do not intend to foist this on you. (So, no, this will not be on the test.) In fact, starting the chapter with the diagram was a trick. We figured we'd first of all get your attention. Then we thought that maybe some of you would puzzle over the diagram long enough to see the sentence emerge, perhaps with a sense of awe as to how an unschooled man (Mr. Lincoln) could, sitting in a noisy train, dash off such a sentence on the back of an envelope. Finally, we figured that after looking at something as detailed and seemingly difficult as the diagram, you would think anything we had to say about the sentence was, by comparison, a cinch.

Maybe learning how to construct a truly worthy sentence—grammatical and graceful, lively and memorable—is not a cinch. But learning the basics is. After all, we *know* sentences. We say them silently to ourselves and out loud to our friends. We write them in e-mails and in notes stuck on the refrigerator door. However, when it comes to studying exactly how sentences are created, it's easy to feel so overwhelmed with definitions, exceptions, rules and regulations that we forget we are already experts.

If you see unfamiliar grammatical terms in this chapter, don't panic. You will be reading about all kinds of sentences: simple, compound, complex, compound–complex, incomplete, run-on, subordinated, over-subordinated, passive voice. Don't be put off by these descriptors, and don't obsess about them, either. Just think of them as shorthand or code. They are a useful way to explain and categorize word patterns. But that's not the goal of learning these terms. The goal, as always, is good writing—learning to put words together with clarity, precision and pizzazz. Should you find yourself caught up in the categories or puzzling over the patterns, remember that when we investigate the sentence, we are investigating a familiar subject, an old friend.

On, then, to the sentence. A *sentence* is a self-contained grammatical unit that ends with a full-stop punctuation mark (period, question mark or exclamation mark). It must contain a verb and a subject (stated or implied) and it must state a complete thought.

A sentence can be as concise as a single word: *Go. Stop. Wait.* (The subject *you* is implied.) It can be as expansive as a masterfully crafted construction of 100-plus words. Regardless of length, grammatically correct sentences result from the same procedure: the selection, manipulation and coordination of sentence parts.

SENTENCE PARTS

Predicates and Subjects

A sentence can be divided into two parts: the *predicate* and the *subject*.

The *simple predicate* of a sentence is the verb. The *simple subject* is the noun or noun substitute that identifies the “actor” or initiator of action in a sentence, as in:

The telemarketer called.
(simple subj.) (simple pred.)

The *complete predicate* includes the verb plus all its complements and modifiers. The *complete subject* includes the noun or noun substitute and all its complements and modifiers:

The fast-talking telemarketer called at dinner time.
(complete subj.) (complete pred.)

We can continue to describe and modify both the subject and the predicate parts of the sentence:

The insistent, fast-talking telemarketer always called at dinner time.
(complete subj.) (complete pred.)

In addition to modifiers and descriptive phrases, action verbs can be complemented by direct objects, indirect objects and prepositional phrases—all of which are considered part of the predicate. A *direct object* is any noun or pronoun that answers the question *what?* or *whom?* An *indirect object* tells *to whom* or *for what* that action is done. A *prepositional phrase* is a preposition followed by its object. These complements must be in the objective case. Recognizing them will help you avoid making errors in case:

The telemarketer was selling satellite dishes.
(noun as dir. obj.)

I gave the telemarketer ten seconds of my time.
(noun as indir. obj.) (noun as dir. obj.)

I responded with an unprintable exclamation.
(prep. phrase)

I responded to him.
(pron. as obj. of prep., objec. case)

The complement of a linking verb is a noun or an adjective describing the subject. These words are also considered part of the predicate:

The telemarketer was a jerk.
(pred. nom.)

I was annoyed.
(pred. adj.)

PHRASES AND CLAUSES

Phrases and clauses are the building blocks of sentences. A *phrase* is a group of related words that lacks both a subject and a predicate. Phrases come in two basic varieties: a *prepositional phrase* (a preposition followed by its object) and a *verbal phrase* (a form of the verb—infinitive, gerund or participle—that does not act as a verb, accompanied by its object or related material). Verbals are also discussed on p. 26.

Despite my placing the phone number on the National No-Call List,
(prep. phrase)
the telemarketer continued to call.

My goal was to enjoy one uninterrupted dinner.
(infin. phrase, acting as a pred. noun)

Unplugging the phone was beginning to look like a good option.
(gerund phrase, acting as a noun)

Grabbing the phone cord, I started to give a yank.
(pres. participial phrase, acting as adj. modifying *I*)

Disturbed by my actions, my housemate yelled an unprintable
(past participial phrase, acting as adj. modifying *my housemate*)
phrase.

Recognizing phrases and knowing what functions they perform can help you in at least two ways. First, you will not mistake a phrase, however lengthy or complex, for a sentence. Because a phrase does not

include a subject (although it can certainly include a noun or a pronoun) or a predicate, it cannot act as a sentence. What it is, as we will see later in this chapter, is a *fragment*. Second, you will not misplace a participle phrase because you recognize that it modifies a noun and must be placed as close as possible to that noun.

A *clause* is a group of related words that contains a subject and a predicate. An *independent* or *main clause* is a complete sentence:

My housemate wrested the phone cord from my hands.

(subj.) (pred.)

A *dependent* or *subordinate clause*, although it also contains a subject and a predicate, does not express a complete thought. It is not a sentence and cannot stand alone:

When he realized what I intended to do

(dependent clause)

When he realized what I intended to do, my housemate wrested

(dependent clause) linked with (main clause)

the phone cord from my hands.

Dependent clauses come in three varieties, according to the function they perform in a sentence. A *noun clause* takes the place of a noun or a noun substitute; an *adjective clause* serves as an adjective; an *adverb clause* acts as an adverb.

That I had overreacted did not surprise him.

(noun clause) (*It*, a pronoun, can be substituted for the clause.)

The telemarketer, who had called every night for a week, had

(adj. clause, modifies the noun *telemarketer*)

obviously gotten on my nerves.

After I took a deep breath and ate a pint of Cherry Garcia ice cream,

(adv. clause, modifies the verb by answering *when?*)

I regained control.

Recognizing dependent clauses is important. Not only will you avoid using them as sentences—the fragment error—but you can also learn to use these clauses to add variety to sentence structure.

TYPES OF SENTENCES

Sentences come in four varieties, depending on the number and type of clauses they contain.

Simple Sentences

A *simple sentence* contains one independent clause. The most common construction is subject-verb-object.

Politicians dodge issues.
(subj.) (verb) (obj.)

We can add modifiers—single words or phrases or a combination of both—but regardless of the number of words, the sentence remains simple if it contains a single, independent clause:

National politicians often dodge controversial issues during reelection
(adj.) (adv.) (adj.) (prep. phrase)
campaigns.

Compound Sentences

A *compound sentence* has two or more independent clauses, each containing a subject and a predicate and each expressing a complete thought. The two complete clauses, equal or nearly equal in importance, are linked (coordinated) by a conjunction and a comma, semicolon or colon. *And*, *but*, *or*, *nor* and *yet* are the conjunctions, sometimes referred to as *coordinating conjunctions*:

The issues may be divisive, but talking about them is crucial to
(indep. clause) (conj.)(indep. clause)
a healthy society.

The issues are divisive; talking about them is crucial to a healthy
(clauses linked by semicolon)
society.

The issues are divisive, but one thing is clear: Talking about them
(three indep. clauses, linked by comma and conj., and colon)
is crucial to a healthy society.

Punctuation is probably the most common problem associated with compound sentences. Because the two (or more) clauses are independent—actually complete sentences on their own—they

cannot be linked by a comma or a conjunction alone. A compound sentence needs both a comma and a coordinating conjunction. If you do not want to use a coordinating conjunction, use a semicolon or, occasionally, a colon. For more on punctuation, see “Run-On Sentences” later in this chapter and Chapter 8, which focuses on punctuation.

Complex Sentences

A *complex sentence* contains one independent (main) clause and at least one dependent (subordinate) clause. The subordinate clause depends on the main clause for both meaning and grammatical completion:

When politicians avoid tough issues, voters tend to stay home.
(dep. clause) (indep. clause)

Voters are apathetic because politicians are spineless.
(indep. clause) (dep. clause)

In the two preceding complex sentences, conjunctions (*when, because*) introduce the dependent clauses. These words, sometimes called *subordinating conjunctions*, establish the relationship between the two sentence parts. Our language has a variety of such words, each with its own precise meaning. The careful writer chooses the subordinating conjunction that best expresses the specific relationship between the dependent and the independent clauses. For example:

Relationship	Conjunctions
cause and effect	because, due to, as a result of, if
sequence	after, before, during, while
time, place	when, whenever, since, where, until, as long as

A dependent clause can also be subordinated to the main clause by relative pronouns (*who, whom, whose, which* or *that*). Note in the first of the following examples that the main clause can be interrupted by the dependent clause:

The one politician who spoke out on the issues made many enemies.
(dep. clause)

She also made friends whose support and loyalty won her the race.
(dep. clause)

Compound–Complex Sentences

A *compound–complex sentence* contains at least two main clauses and one dependent clause. The construction seems to invite wordiness, but a careful writer will refuse to fall into the trap. Here is a three-clause sentence that works:

After the politician went on record against the issue, the media
 (dep. clause) (indep. clause)
called her “principled,” and campaign contributions poured in.
 (indep. clause)

If you find that a compound–complex sentence is out of control—so complicated that readers will lose the thread, so long that broadcasters will gasp for breath—break the sentence into two (or more) parts, being careful to maintain the relationship between subordinate and main thoughts.

A GOOD SENTENCE

You begin by choosing words carefully, respectful of their meanings, aware of their sounds and rhythms. You form the words into clusters and join the clusters with invisible seams. A pattern emerges.

You read it to yourself. It says precisely what you want it to say. It has grammatical unity. The idea is coherent; the statement, concise. You sit back to marvel.

You have written a good sentence.

SENTENCE ERRORS

Perhaps you *haven't* written a good sentence. Maybe you've fallen prey to one of the following ungrammatical or sluggish constructions: sentence fragment, run-on sentence, oversubordination, dead construction, passive voice. Don't panic. You can catch this at the editing stage if you know what to look for. (Better yet, you can avoid the error in the first place by understanding sentence construction!)

Sentence Fragments

A *fragment*, literally an incomplete piece, is a group of words sheared off from or never attached to the sentence. The group of words may lack a subject, a predicate, a complete thought or any combination of the

three. No matter what it lacks, it is not a grammatical sentence and should not stand alone. If you punctuate it as if it were a sentence, you have created a fragment.

Like this one.

Fragments can be single words, brief phrases or lengthy dependent clauses. The number of words is irrelevant. What matters is that the words do not meet the definition of a sentence. A common mistake is to look only for subject and verb and, having found them, to believe that you have written a complete sentence. Remember, a sentence expresses a complete thought.

Although they were award-winning movie producers

contains a subject (*they*) and a verb (*were*) but does not express a complete thought. It is a dependent clause, a fragment.

They were award-winning movie producers.

(complete thought)

Although they were award-winning movie producers, their pictures consistently lost money.

(complete thought)

Now that you know what a fragment is and what it must contain, avoiding or rewriting fragments should not be difficult. First, recognize that it is a fragment. It can be a single word, a phrase or a dependent clause. Now you have three choices: (1) Rewrite the fragment to include all the parts it needs (subject, verb, complete thought); (2) incorporate the fragment into a complete sentence; or (3) add to the fragment, making it a complete sentence. Here's how it works:

Their newest picture was a critical success. But a commercial failure.

(fragment)

Their newest picture was a critical success. Unfortunately, it was also a commercial failure.

(fragment rewritten as a complete thought)

Their newest picture, although a critical success, was a commercial failure.

(sentence rewritten to incorporate fragment)

Their newest picture was a critical success. It was also a commercial failure that cost the studio \$23 million.

(addition to fragment forms a complete sentence)

Some accomplished writers will tell you that fragments serve a useful purpose. Advertising copywriters seem to have a particular penchant for fragments. In appropriate instances, to achieve particular effects, certain grammatical rules can be broken—and this is one of them. *Purposeful fragments*—consistent with the subject, the audience and the medium—are a matter of style. *Accidental fragments* are a grammatical error.

Run-On Sentences

A *run-on sentence* doesn't know when to quit. Rushing forward without proper punctuation, this construction may actually include two or three complete sentences. Length is not the issue here. A relatively short sentence, like this one, can be a run-on:

The concert was sold out for a week, the promoters didn't add a second date.

This sentence is actually two independent clauses run together with a comma. Using commas to link independent clauses (without the help of a conjunction) almost always results in a run-on sentence. In fact, this comma-splice error is the most common cause of run-on sentences. But if you can recognize an independent clause, and if you understand the limitations of the comma, you can avoid the error.

The most frequently used of all punctuation marks, the comma serves a variety of purposes. But one job a comma rarely performs is creating a long pause between independent clauses. This function is performed by the semicolon, the period or, occasionally, the colon. When you force the comma to do a job for which it was not designed, you create a grammatically incorrect construction.

Rarely, and only with extreme care, a writer might violate the comma-splice rule. When a sentence is composed of two or more brief, parallel clauses, commas might be used:

Be correct, be concise, be coherent.

In certain kinds of writing—literary journalism or a stylish feature story, for example—a writer might purposefully create comma-splice run-ons to achieve a particular effect. But this kind of rule-breaking depends on knowing and respecting the rule.

Comma-splice run-ons, in addition to being grammatically incorrect, almost always lack clarity. A comma signals readers that they are

reading one continuous idea interrupted by a brief pause (the comma). Readers expect the words following the comma to augment or complement what they have just read. But in a comma-splice run-on, there is not one continuous idea. New thoughts are introduced without the benefit of connections between them (for example, *but*, *and* or *or*).

You can correct a run-on sentence in four ways:

1. Change the run-on sentence to two (or more) complete sentences by adding periods and capital letters:

The concert was sold out for a week. The promoters didn't add a second date.

2. If there is a close and equal relationship between the two (or more) complete thoughts (clauses) in the run-on, insert a semicolon between them to express this relationship. A semicolon shows this connection and allows the reader to move swiftly from the first sentence to the second. But semicolons are somewhat formal and a little stodgy. They may not work in all instances:

The concert was sold out for week; the promoters didn't add a second date.

3. In a comma-splice run-on, connect the two sentences with a coordinating conjunction if the two parts are of equal weight. Use *and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*, *yet* or *so* according to the meaning of the sentence. Always use a comma before the conjunction:

The concert was sold out for a week, but the promoters didn't add a second date.

4. If the relationship between the two (or more) independent clauses is such that one clause depends on the other, rewrite the "dependent" sentence as a clause and place it in front of or after the main clause. Choose a subordinating conjunction that expresses the nature of the relationship and place it appropriately. Subordinating conjunctions include *after*, *because*, *while*, *when*, *where*, *since*, *if* and *although*.

Although the concert was sold out for a week, the promoters did not add a second date.

Oversubordinated Sentences

Subordination, the fourth way just listed to correct a run-on sentence, is the technique of making one idea less important than, or subordinate to, another. Consider these sentences:

Lizzie Hager won the \$200 million Powerball jackpot.

Lizzie Hager purchased only a single Powerball ticket.

Assuming the idea in the first sentence is the more important one, you can subordinate the idea in the second sentence by creating a dependent clause and attaching it to the main clause.

Although Lizzie Hager purchased only a single ticket, she won the \$200 million Powerball jackpot.

Lizzie Hager, who had purchased only a single ticket, won the \$200 million Powerball jackpot.

Subordinating one idea to another is a useful sentence-building technique. But beware of oversubordination. A string of dependent clauses, or one excessively long dependent clause, placed before the main sentence can slow the pace. You make your readers or listeners wait too long to get to the important idea, and you risk losing and confusing them.

After losing her job and having her car repossessed, although she was not a risk-taker and despite the fact that she purchased only a single ticket, Lizzie Hager won the \$200 million Powerball jackpot. (oversubordination)

There are too many ideas here for one sentence. The three subordinate clauses that precede the main idea bog down the sentence and slow the reader's comprehension. The sentence needs to be rewritten, shortening and combining the introductory ideas or giving them a sentence of their own.

Another kind of oversubordination occurs when several dependent clauses are tacked on to the end of the main clause. The result is a confusing succession of modifiers:

Lizzie Hager won the \$200 million Powerball jackpot, which surprised Powerball experts because she had purchased only one ticket and had never gambled before, which was not the profile of the usual winner who regularly spent at least \$20 a week on tickets.

This sentence never seems to end, with a parade of phrases and clauses following the main idea. All these ideas confuse the reader and dilute meaning. Once again, there is too much here for a single sentence. The solution is to rewrite it as several sentences.

Sentences can also suffer from oversubordination when a main clause is sandwiched between two dependent clauses. The result can be an awkward, choppy sentence:

Although Lizzie Hager purchased only a single ticket, she won the \$200 million Powerball jackpot, which surprised experts because she did not fit the winner profile.

(front and back subordination)

This sentence is not certifiably awful, but it is certainly not graceful. Two sentences would be best.

Dead Constructions

Perhaps they are holdovers from term paper writing style, but these constructions have a limited place in good writing: *it is* and *there is*. In most cases these words, called *expletives*, merely take up space, performing no function in the sentence. They not only add clutter but also often rob the sentence of its power by shifting emphasis from what could be a strong verb to a weaker construction—a linking verb (*is*, *was* and other forms of *to be*):

There was a protest by angry students in front of the university bookstore.

(verb potential)

bookstore.

Angry students protested in front of the university bookstore.

(stronger verb)

It was their intention to bring attention to the high cost of textbooks.

(verb potential)

textbooks.

They intended to bring attention to the high cost of textbooks.

(stronger verb)

In addition to strengthening the sentence by using an action verb, avoiding *there is/there are* constructions has another benefit: simpler subject–verb agreement. (See our discussion of *There is/There are* as

“false subjects” in Chapter 6.) *There* is not usually a subject. Whether you use *is* or *are* depends on what follows the verb:

There is a concern about runaway inflation in the textbook market.
(subj.)

There are additional protests planned.
(subj.)

Looking for the subject after the verb often creates agreement confusion. Avoid both the confusion and the dead construction by restructuring the sentence. For example:

Students are concerned about runaway inflation in the textbook market.

Students are planning additional protests.

It is/there is constructions are not entirely without value. You might purposefully choose this structure to emphasize the subject and change the meter of the sentence:

It was the manager of the university bookstore who masterminded the protests.
(emphasis)

The manager of the university bookstore masterminded the protests.
(no emphasis)

A good rule to follow is this: If *it is/there is* merely takes up space in the sentence, restructure the sentence. Rescue the “hidden verb” and avoid agreement problems. If on occasion you want to emphasize the subject, use *it is/there is*—but use it sparingly.

Passive Voice

Here’s a quiz for you: Would you rather have someone call your writing (a) lively, nimble, spry and spirited or (b) listless, stagnant, sluggish and leaden? If you chose (a), read on. If you chose (b), well, we know you were just kidding . . .

The adjectives in (a) describe *active* writing, which can mean many things. For the purposes of this discussion about sentence pitfalls, we mean *active voice*. The adjectives in (b) characterize *passive* writing—or *passive voice*—the enemy of energetic prose.

Awkwardness is caused when passive voice is used. Power is robbed from sentences, and stiltedness is caused. Strong verbs are weakened.

When writers use passive voice, they create awkward prose and powerless, stilted sentences with weakened verbs.

Read the first example again. Does the language sound clumsy and unnatural, lifeless and detached? We think so. This is passive-voice construction at work. Now read the second example, with the ideas rewritten in the active voice. If you can recognize the improvement—the leaner construction, the faster pace, the straightforward design, the strong, unencumbered verbs—you know why active voice is *almost always* preferable.

What is passive voice?

Voice refers to the form of the verb. The subject acts when you use the *active voice* verb form. In the *passive voice*, the person or thing performing the action becomes instead the object of the sentence; it does not act, but is acted *upon* by the verb:

The accounting firm juggled the books.
(active)

The books were juggled by the accounting firm.
(passive)

The books were juggled.
(passive)

In the first sentence, the actor (*accounting firm*) is performing the action (*juggled*) on the recipient of the action (*books*). In the second sentence, the recipient (*books*) is having the action (*juggled*) performed on it by the actor (*accounting firm*). The second sentence is an awkward inversion of the first. Look at it this way:

Active Construction

who	did what	to whom
actor	performed action	on recipient
accounting firm	juggled	books

Passive Construction

who	had what done to it	by whom
recipient	acted upon	by actor
books	were juggled	by accounting firm

The third sentence is also in the passive voice. Here the actor—*who* juggled the books—is missing. The recipient (*books*) is being acted upon (*juggled*), but we do not know by whom.

Unless something else is structurally wrong with a passive-voice sentence, it is not technically a grammatical error. In fact, all three of the examples are grammatically correct. But the first sentence is lean and straightforward, and the second is clumsy and stilted. The third does not do the job we expect of a good sentence. It does not tell us all the information.

Some novice writers mistakenly think that the presence of *is*, *was* or another form of the verb *to be* necessarily signals the passive voice. Although passive-voice construction does use *to be* forms, not all *to be* forms are in the passive voice:

The company treasurer was shifting funds into ghost accounts.
(active)

Here the actor (*treasurer*) performs the action (*shifting*). The order is straightforward: who did what. The *was* does not signal passive voice; it is merely a *helping* or *auxiliary* verb. For this sentence to be in the passive voice, it would have to be constructed like this:

Funds were shifted into ghost accounts by the company treasurer.
(passive)

Note that *funds*, the recipient of the action, is now the subject of the sentence. The actor, *treasurer*, which was the subject of the first sentence, now appears as the object. The order is inverted; the result is clumsy.

In the following sentence, *was* does signal a passive-voice construction:

His “creative accounting” was discovered.
(passive)

This sentence is passive because *creative accounting* is the recipient of the action, not the one performing the action. The actor, the person responsible for the discovery, is absent from the sentence.

His “creative accounting” was discovered by a 20-year-old college intern.
(passive, actor supplied)

A 20-year-old college intern discovered the treasurer’s “creative accounting.”

(active)

Don’t try to identify passive voice by the tense of the verb or by the presence of auxiliary verbs. Instead, find the verb and ask: Who or what is performing this action? If the actor (the *who*) is missing, or if the actor is having the action performed on it rather than directly doing the action, the sentence is passive.

Take another look at one of the sentences from the beginning of this section:

Awkwardness is caused when passive voice is used.

(Who/what causes awkwardness? Who uses passive voice?)

When writers use passive voice, they create awkward prose.

(Active voice: who does what to whom)

Now that you can identify passive voice, let’s consider its major disadvantages.

Disadvantages of passive voice

1. Passive voice tends to sap the verb of its power. Partially, this is because of the presence of an auxiliary verb (a form of the verb *to be*) followed by a preposition (usually *by*). But it is also because the relationship between action and actor is indirect rather than straightforward:

The company was sued by distraught shareholders.

(passive)

Distraught shareholders sued the company.

(active)

Passive voice can also bury the real verb of the sentence. Look at what happens to the strong, direct verb *accused* in the following sentences:

The senators accused the accounting firm of criminal behavior.

(active)

Accusations were made by the senators about the criminal behavior of the accounting firm.

(passive)

The passive-voice sentence changes the verb *accused* to the noun *accusations*. The result is stilted construction and a flabby sentence.

2. Passive voice can make a sentence unnecessarily awkward. It does this by reversing the expected relationship of who did what to whom. Subject-verb-object is almost always the clearest, smoothest construction. It is also the most succinct. Changing the order means adding unnecessary words:

Investigations are being conducted by three Senate committees into the company's bookkeeping irregularities.

(passive)

Three Senate committees are investigating irregularities in the company's bookkeeping.

(active)

3. Passive voice creates false formality. It can make a sentence sound impersonal, bureaucratic and overinflated.

It has been revealed by company insiders that "creative accounting" and bookkeeping irregularities are part of a larger pattern of corporate misbehavior.

(passive, unnecessarily formal)

Company insiders revealed that "creative accounting" and bookkeeping irregularities are part of a larger pattern of corporate misbehavior.

(active)

"Creative accounting" and bookkeeping irregularities are part of a larger pattern of corporate malfeasance, according to company insiders.

(active)

The tendency to use passive voice to create formality may come from term paper writing or textbook reading, where such overblown sentences often reside. As a favorite construction of politicians and scientists, passive voice is all around us, but as writers we must strive to communicate simply, directly and unpretentiously.

4. Passive voice may intentionally or accidentally obscure who or what is responsible for an action. It can hide the identity of the actor from the audience:

Mistakes were made.

Who made these mistakes? The passive-voice construction masks the identity of the responsible entity, but who or what is responsible for an action may be vital information. It may be the *most* vital information! How are we

to understand the real meaning behind this sentence if the actor is obscured? Consider the vastly different implications of the following sentences:

“Mistakes were made,” the company president said at his morning press conference.

“I made mistakes,” the company president admitted at his morning press conference.

The inclusion of the *who* makes a difference, doesn't it?

Correcting passive voice

Unless you have a specific reason to use passive voice (see p. 64), avoid it by constructing or rewriting sentences in the active voice. Remember: In the active voice, the actor performs the action. That doesn't mean that all sentences will be alike. You can vary sentences by placement of phrases and clauses, by length, by internal rhythm, by any number of stylistic decisions.

Correcting passive voice is simple once you recognize the construction. Here's how:

1. Find the verb in the sentence.
2. Ask yourself *who* or *what* is performing the action of the verb. When you do this, you are identifying the actor in the sentence. Keep in mind that some passive-voice sentences omit the real actor. You may not be able to find the person or thing responsible for the action in the sentence; you may have to add it.
3. Construct the sentence so that the real actor performs the action.

Now let's go through the three steps, beginning with the following passive-voice sentence:

An exposé of the accounting scandal is being written by the young intern who first discovered the bookkeeping irregularities.

1. The verb is *being written*.
2. *Who* performed the action? *Who* is writing? *The intern*. He or she should be the subject of the sentence.
3. Construct the sentence so that the actor performs the action:

The young intern who first discovered the bookkeeping irregularities is writing an exposé of the scandal.

When passive voice is justified

Because passive-voice construction reverses the order of a sentence from actor-verb-recipient to recipient-verb-actor, it can be a useful and justifiable construction when: (1) the recipient is more important than the actor or (2) the actor is unknown, irrelevant or impossible to identify.

In certain instances, the recipient of the action is more important (in journalism, more *newsworthy*) than the performer of the action:

The company treasurer was indicted on three counts of fraud by a federal grand jury.

The verb is *indicted*. *Who* indicted? The grand jury. But clearly the object of the indictment—the treasurer—takes precedence in the sentence. It is the newsworthy element. Passive voice is justified here.

The treasurer and his top assistant were arrested this morning after a high-speed chase through the streets of downtown Milwaukee.

The verb is *arrested*. *Who* arrested? The sentence does not tell us. The person or persons performing the action in the sentence are missing. But because arrests are almost always made by law enforcement personnel, the actor is far less important than the recipients of the action—the treasurer and his assistant. Passive voice is allowable, even preferable, in this example as well.

Sometimes the *who* or *what* performing the action is unknown or difficult to identify. When the doer cannot be identified, the writer has little choice but to construct a passive-voice sentence. In this case passive voice is appropriate:

The company's offices were burglarized sometime late last night.

The verb is *burglarized*. *Who* or *what* burglarized the offices? The desperate treasurer? A minion of the accounting firm? A trio of 10-year-old girls? The doer of this action is unknown. The recipient of the action—the object of the burglary—assumes the prominent place in the sentence.

Occasionally, an expert writer might use passive voice as a stylistic device to create a sense of detachment, a sense that no one is taking responsibility for certain actions, a feeling that actions are out of control

or mysterious. Purposefully obscuring or removing prominence from the doer might create suspense. Passive voice as a stylistic element, used conservatively and appropriately, may be useful in essays, short stories, an occasional magazine feature or even advertising copy.

Shifting voices

Do not change voice from active to passive, or vice versa, within a sentence. This muddled construction shifts focus and confuses the audience. Active voice emphasizes the doer. Passive voice emphasizes the recipient:

The company president expressed concern over the bookkeeping scandal, but the drop in stock prices was not mentioned in his speech yesterday.

The focus of the first part of the sentence is *the company president*, the doer or actor. The focus of the second part of the sentence is *drop in stock prices* (the recipient of the action), resulting in a confusing and awkward shift. It adds unnecessary words and robs the second verb, *mentioned*, of its power. (This is also an error in what is called parallel structure, which we discuss in Chapter 6.) The sentence would be stronger and clearer if both parts were in the active voice. Here's an improvement:

The company president expressed concern over the bookkeeping scandal in yesterday's speech but avoided any mention of the drop in stock prices.

Pay particular attention to shifts to the passive after an impersonal *one* or *you*:

If you study harder, grades can be improved.

The first part of the sentence is in the active voice. The second part shifts the emphasis from the actor (*you*) to the recipient (*grades*). Keep both sentence parts in the active voice for clarity:

If you study harder, you can improve your grades.

A final word about voice

Active voice creates sharp, clear, vigorous sentence construction. It is straightforward and powerful. Be active—and direct—unless you have a justifiable reason to use passive voice.

THE LEAD SENTENCE

We'd like to end this discussion of the sentence with some hints about the single most important sentence a media writer writes: the first sentence. The first sentence is important to all writers, whether they are writing news stories or crafting novels, penning poetry or composing ad copy. Competing for a reader's, viewer's or listener's time and attention is serious business. It is here, with the first sentence, that you make—or fail to make—the connection with the audience.

In a traditional news story or press release for print or broadcast, the first sentence is designed to give the audience a concise, comprehensive summary of the most important elements of the story. Although other forms of media writing, such as feature stories and advertising copywriting, do not require this summary lead approach, they too demand that the writer have a clear sense of what is new or interesting about the material. This ability to recognize the essence of the material is central to writing a strong lead sentence. Combining this ability (learned, with time and practice) with your language skills will help you craft the important first sentence.

You must be cautious because, with its admonishments to tell everything (who? what? when? where? how?) in one sentence, the summary lead approach can open the door to bad writing. Packing a sentence with all this material increases the chance that you will write a muddled, rambling or otherwise awkward sentence. Run-ons and oversubordination are common problems because you have so much information to include.

Writing a simple lead sentence with subject-verb-object construction may also be difficult because of the amount of information you must include. Remember that compound and complex sentences, if constructed economically, can be both clear and concise.

In non-news writing, the lead sentence is often meant to grab attention and pull the reader or listener into the message. Crisp, dynamic sentences are the key, as in this simple but powerful feature lead for a profile of a geneticist:

He's high on the scientist's favorite drug: discovery.

Consider this attention-grabbing lead that introduces an eight-page advertising insert for the famous M. D. Anderson Cancer Center at the University of Texas:

Everything causes cancer.

The lead deserves your special attention. Of course, *all* sentences should be constructed grammatically, powerfully and gracefully.

This page intentionally left blank

Agreement: The Search for Harmony and Order

It's time for a quiz.

Try your hand at these verb and pronoun choices:

1. One of the biggest challenges in grammar (A) **is** (B) **are** maintaining harmony in sentence elements.
2. “Agreement” is one of those grammatical trouble spots that (A) **confuses** (B) **confuse** many writers.
3. A team of writers (A) **has** (B) **have** agreed on (A) **its** (B) **their** list of changes to the screenplay.

The answers are at the end of this chapter. By the time you get there, you'll know them!

Harmony and order contribute to clear communication. Just as laws can help create a civilized society, rules of grammar provide a governance to create shared understanding in what we write and say.

Do we need these rules? **Yes**. Could we shun them and depend on our “ear”—that is, we know what “sounds right”? **No**. Let's prove this by examining the critically important rules of agreement. We will deal with these three areas:

- subject–verb
- pronoun reference
- parallel structure

SUBJECT–VERB AGREEMENT

This rule seems straightforward:

■ **A verb must agree with the intended number of its subject.**

However, even the most seasoned writer has struggled with this rule, as it requires

1. Identifying the actual subject of the sentence.
2. Deciding the subject’s number—singular or plural.

As we pointed out in several previous chapters, knowledge of parts of speech and of sentence elements is vital to mastering subject–verb agreement. For example, you now know that a subject of a sentence can be either a noun or a pronoun. A subject, of course, is the actor or key starting point of a sentence; it directly connects to the action or state of being of a verb.

Let’s consider for a moment what a subject is *not*:

- It is *not* the object of a preposition.

Each of these books **has** a special place in her heart.

(subj.)(prep. phrase) (verb—singular)

(The real subject is *Each*, a pronoun. *Books*, the object of the preposition *of*, is plural; although it is physically close to the verb, *books* has no effect on the verb’s number.)

Of course, a subject isn’t always located at the beginning of a sentence. Look at this next example, which begins with three prepositional phrases:

Around the corner and next to that shop with all those delicious cookies **is** a delightful bookstore.

(prep. phrases) (verb—sing.) (subject)

(Here the subject is at the end of the sentence! If you re-cast the sentence as “A delightful bookstore is . . .,” you can see that *bookstore* initiates the idea or activity of this sentence. *Bookstore*, singular, requires a singular verb, *is*.)

- It is *not* the expletive *there* or *here*.

Here **are** several books for you to review.

(expl.)(verb) (subject)

(In this usage, an expletive [such as *here* or *there*] “anticipates” the subject that follows it. That is why such words are sometimes called “anticipatory subjects.” However, they have no standing as a subject, and in fact, their use can be a sign of weak or indirect writing. In most cases, it should be obvious that the subject resides after the verb in these constructions.)

- It is *not* the object of a gerund.

Creating new investment opportunities is her biggest priority.

(gerund as subject) (verb)

(*Creating*, a gerund, is the real subject. *Creating* is an act, not an action, so it is not a verb; all gerunds are nouns. Remember our discussion on p. 26. *Opportunities*, the gerund’s object, does not influence the verb’s number.)

- It is *not* a predicate nominative.

The company’s biggest concern today is personal bankruptcies.

(subject) (verb—sing.)(pred. nominative)

This an example of how a writer needs to “parse” a sentence to properly connect a subject to its verb. Keep in mind that a predicate nominative, although linked to the subject, does *not* control the number of the verb.

- It is *not* a phrase that is parenthetical to the true subject.

The welfare bill, as well as two resolutions on medical aid,

(subj.)(parenthetical phrase)

was sent to the subcommittee for hearings.

(verb)

(Phrases such as *along with* and *as well as* merely modify the real subject of a sentence. They do not turn that subject into compound, or plural, construction.)

To recap this discussion of “false subjects,” here is a list of correct subject–verb combinations. (Both sentence parts are underlined.)

The rate of homicides is dropping.

(subj.) (verb)

(*Homicides*, the object of the preposition *of*, cannot control the verb’s number.)

Here are the major announcements on the president’s agenda.

(expl.)(verb—plural) (subject—a noun)

(The expletives *here* and *there* cannot be the subject of a sentence.)

ting all those bricks has injured Bill's back.

(subj.—gerund) (verb—singular)

(Gerund phrases have objects, but it is the gerund, not the object of the phrase, that controls the number of the verb. *Lifting* is a singular activity.)

Her biggest motivation was the refugees.

(subject) (verb)(pred. nominative)

(This is a good example of how “what sounds right” may lead you astray.)

The fitness center, along with the espresso and wine bars,

(subject) (parenthetical phrase)

was destroyed in the fire.

(verb—singular)

(Parenthetical phrases are additional information and are not connected to the subject for purposes of choosing the number of its verb.)

Now that we have focused on what a subject **is not**, let's turn to what a subject **is**.

Deciding whether the subject of a sentence is singular or plural sometimes takes some analysis. Let's examine this area in three ways: (1) when the subject is always singular, (2) when the subject is always plural and (3) when it could be both.

The Always-Singular Subject

This area features several firm rules that should give you little trouble.

- **As the subject of a sentence, the pronouns *each, either, anyone, everyone, much, one, no one, nothing* and *someone* always take singular verbs.**

Each of these movie scripts has great box office potential.

(Note that *scripts*, the object of a preposition, cannot control the number of the verb. The focus is on *each script*, which is singular.)

Everyone has voted already.

- **When *each, either, every* or *neither* is used as an adjective, the noun it modifies always takes a singular verb.**

Every jar of pickles was spoiled.

(noun)

Either option is likely to fail.
(noun)

- When used as the subject of a sentence, the personal pronoun *it* always takes a singular verb.

As President Harding said, it wasn't his enemies who brought him down; it was his friends.

- When *the number* is the subject of a sentence, it always takes a singular verb, no matter the number of the noun in the prepositional phrase.

The number of bicycle thefts is dropping.

Note that *the* is more definite than *a*. *The number* implies an organized unit, which we can take to be singular. *A number* refers to an undefined amount; we don't know how many, but we do know that it is more than one. Therefore, this sentence would be correct:

A number of angry protesters are gathering at the headquarters of the law firm of Dewey, Cheatem and Howe.

- Subjects that stand for definable units of money, measurement, time, organization, food and medical problems always take singular verbs.

Four million dollars was the winning bid.

Three million board feet of redwood has been destroyed in the fire.

(Consider this large amount of lumber as one giant package.)

Six hours of swimming has turned him into a giant prune.

The United Auto Workers is on strike.

(This is a labor organization, a singular unit.)

Cold pizza and melted ice cream is his usual breakfast.

Measles wears down parents as well as children.

- A singular subject followed by such phrases as *together with* and *as well as* always takes a singular verb because those phrases are merely a modification of their subjects.

The new Internet service company, as well as two of its proposed new off-shoot businesses, has attracted the attention of venture capitalists.

(In some cases, *together with* and *as well as* constructions can be awkward. There could be more direct ways to say the same thing.)

- When all parts of a compound subject are singular and refer to the same person or thing, the verb is always singular.

The president and board chair is Sarah Foster.
(compound subj.) (verb)

(In this sentence, both of these titles apply to Sarah. A plural verb choice would indicate two people, not one.)

The Always-Plural Subject

- When a compound subject is joined by the conjunction *and*, it always takes a plural verb if the subjects refer to different persons or things and if the subject cannot be considered a unit.

Ten military officers and one civilian have been arrested on charges of espionage.

(Note that although the part of the compound subject closer to the verb is singular, the entire subject still takes a plural verb. The rule is different, however, for *or*, *neither . . . nor* and *either . . . or* constructions, as you will see in the next part of this section.)

- As the subject of a sentence, indefinite pronouns such as *both*, *few*, *many* and *several* always take a plural verb.

Many are cold, but few are frozen.

- Well-recognized foreign plurals require plural verbs if they do not represent a singular unit.

Your criteria for grading my report are unfair.

(*Criteria*, the plural form of *criterion*, means standards or rules. This word has origins in the Greek language. *Phenomena*, the plural of the Greek *phenomenon*, is another example of plural usage.)

The news media are under attack for their coverage of the National Security Agency.

(The singular of the Latin plural *media* is *medium*. Note also the use of the plural possessive pronoun *their* to provide consistency in antecedent selection.)

Her upper vertebrae were crushed in the accident.

(The singular of the Latin-derived *vertebrae* is *vertebra*.)

Other so-called foreign plurals include *alumni/alumnae*, *data*, *memoranda* and *strata*. Your dictionary will be helpful in distinguishing singular from plural.

- **A number as the subject takes a plural verb because it does not represent a singular or cohesive unit.**

A number of famous authors are scheduled to speak.

(Because the actual number is unknown, it can't be considered—or treated grammatically—as a unit. Therefore, it takes on a plural sense.)

The Singular or Plural Subject

Our language contains a series of agreement exceptions that seem confusing at first. Certainly, this first rule needs some getting used to:

- **When a compound subject contains the conjunction *or* or *but* or contains an *either . . . or* or *neither . . . nor* correlative, the subject closest to the verb determines the number of the verb.**

Your nose rings or your eyebrow stud has to be removed.

(pl. subj.) (sing. subj.) (sing. verb)

(The writer may have listed nose rings first to indicate a priority. If there was no such ranking, then it might have been better to put the singular subject first and the plural one second in order to use a plural verb.)

Neither he nor his partners have reported for work.

(sing. subj.)(pl. subj.) (pl. verb)

- **Depending on their meaning in a sentence, collective nouns and certain words that seem plural in form may take a singular or a plural verb.**

Once again the test of a unit can be applied. If a word indicates that persons or things are working together as an identifiable unit, it takes a singular verb.

Here are some examples of the proper use of the singular verb. We'll follow each example with a plural use when appropriate:

Politics is a topic to avoid at parties.

But note:

The mayor's politics are offensive.

("Practiced political principles" is the meaning here, not the concept of "politics." If you think of this politician as spreading offensive political practices, the meaning becomes clearer.)

The jury has convicted Smith on three counts of murder.

(A jury is a group of citizens who consider evidence and arguments in a civil or criminal trial and who issue a verdict. Normally, a jury is considered as a unit, which qualifies it as a collective noun.)

But note:

The jury were polled on their split verdict.

(Because the jurors weren't unanimous in their findings, they now are being considered individually.)

If a plural verb is required with a collective noun, but it just doesn't sound right (the previous sentence is awkward), consider a rewrite, such as:

The jurors were polled on the split verdict.

Acoustics is the scientific study of sound.

But note:

The acoustics in this auditorium are terrible.

Typical collective nouns include *audience*, *board*, *group*, *herd*, *public* and *team*. Their intended meaning will help you determine whether such words are intended as singular or plural.

- **Pronouns such as *any*, *none* and *some* and nouns such as *all* and *most* take singular verbs if they refer to a unit or a general quantity. They take plural verbs if they refer to amount or individuals.**

All of the retirement complex was destroyed.

(general) (unit)

All of the theater receipts are missing.
(amount)

Most of the day's work was wasted.
(general)

Most of the team members were uninjured.
(amount—can be counted)

None of the prosecution witnesses is expected to testify today.
(In this sense, *none* means “not one.”)

None of the stolen goods were recovered.
(number)
(The sentence cannot mean that no one good was recovered; it means that “no goods were recovered.”)

None is a particularly maddening pronoun, and its use causes a great deal of debate. We believe that the word *none* (“not one”) is almost always singular. In the following sentence, however, a writer’s selection of plural predicate nominative (*women*) makes the intended number of *none* clear (we hope):

None of the indicted stockbrokers are women.

Another example:

None of these blue jeans fit.
(It would strain reality to say “Not one blue jean fits.”)

- **When a subject is a fraction, or when it is a word such as *half*, *part*, *plenty* and *rest*, its intended number is suggested by the object of the preposition that follows it.**

(And yes, we realize we just told you to ignore the object of the preposition back on p. 70. Sorry. This is what makes writing an interesting challenge.)

Three-fourths of the new apartment complex is flooded.
(subj.) (obj. of prep.) (verb)

Three-fourths of payroll checks have been stolen.
(subj.) (obj. of prep.) (verb)

Half of the rent money is missing.
(subj.) (obj. of prep.) (verb)

Half of the rent receipts are missing.
 (subj.) (obj. of prep.) (verb)

Remember: If your sentence seems awkward when you properly employ a rule of agreement, you may want to rewrite it. The use of “none” and of a number of collective nouns may fall into this category. Clarity is your goal.

PRONOUN REFERENCE: THE ANTECEDENT SEARCH

As noun substitutes, pronouns offer a certain economy to a sentence. They can also confuse its meaning. Because a pronoun requires an *antecedent* (a noun to which the pronoun refers), its link to the antecedent is critical.

To whom do you think the pronoun *she* refers in the following sentence?

Just seconds after the officer told the reporter and the photographer to get out of the line of fire, she dashed to her car radio.

In this example you may think it’s logical that *she* refers to the officer, who appears to be the main actor in this sentence. However, logic and clarity don’t always rule the day in writing. Without a clear connection between pronoun and antecedent, clarity suffers. If your readers search in vain for a clear reference for the pronoun, you have engaged in a false economy. It’s time to rewrite:

Just seconds after Officer McCarthy told the reporter and the photographer to get out of the line of fire, the reporter dashed to her car radio.

A more difficult problem with pronouns is number and person agreement with antecedents. Consider these sentences:

Zane is the only one of the journalists who has met the deadline.

(In this sentence, the proximity of the noun *journalists* to the relative pronoun *who* might suggest that *who* refers to them. In fact, only one journalist—Zane—has met the deadline. Hence, the singular verb *has met*.)

Physics is one of those subjects that challenge him.

(A logical analysis of this sentence tells us that there is more than one subject that will challenge him. Hence, a plural verb is needed. And yes, in this case, the object of a preposition [*subjects*] can be an antecedent.)

The logic of his arguments cannot support itself.

(Support of the arguments' logic, not the arguments themselves, is the topic of this sentence. Hence, the singular *logic* is followed by the singular pronoun *itself*, rather than *themselves*.)

The sales manager's presentation was flashy, but not many buyers
(antecedent)

were swayed by it.

(pronoun)

(Don't be fooled by the possessive *manager's*. Obviously, it modified *presentation*. Most likely the buyers weren't impressed by the manager either!)

Neither of the men has admitted his involvement in the burglary.

(subj.) (pron.)

(As you recall, *neither* takes a singular verb. It follows that the possessive pronoun *his*, referring to *neither*, would have to be singular as well.)

Remember: A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in both number and person. Stay consistent and make your references clear.

PARALLEL STRUCTURE

Harmony and order in writing go beyond subject–verb and antecedent agreement. Parallel structure is also an important component of this area of grammar. A sentence is considered *parallel* when its various units are in grammatical balance. When a sentence lacks parallelism, its focus softens and its rhythm falters. Let's examine the most common of these problems. Note how each of these errors injures harmony and order.

Common Errors in Parallelism

1. Creating a series that is unbalanced and awkward.

She enjoys books, videos and surfing the Internet.

Why is this sentence unbalanced? It contains three nouns in a series, but the third noun is a verbal (gerund). It throws off the meter; it lacks

parallel structure. This sentence could easily regain its rhythm by using three gerund phrases:

She enjoys reading books, watching videos and surfing the Internet.

In the next example, an adjective clashes with a prepositional phrase in a brief series:

Your essay is compelling and of the utmost thoughtfulness.
(adjective) (prepositional phrase)

Using two adjectives with the linking verb makes it parallel:

Your essay is compelling and thoughtful.
(adj.) (adj.)

Another problem occurs when a writer creates a series of direct objects that aren't equal or balanced, as in

The terrorism expert gave opinions on airline safety, security screenings and that thorough inspections of baggage may never be implemented.

Two of these direct objects were brief and balanced, but the third was a long dependent clause. This concise sentence reads more smoothly:

The terrorism expert gave opinions on airline safety, security screenings and thorough baggage inspections.

2. Mixing verbals.

Generally speaking, different types of verbals don't co-exist peacefully in the same sentence, as in

This is another example of selectively using favorable statistics
(gerund phrase)

and then to write a report around that biased selection.
(infinitive phrase)

Here, the gerund and infinitive phrases conflict. The sentence would be parallel if the writer stuck with gerunds. Note how the rhythm seems more natural in this version:

This is another example of selectively using favorable statistics and writing a report around that biased selection.

3. Unnecessarily changing voice.

Verbs can have active or passive voices, as Chapter 5 tells us. Writers choose a voice according to the need to have the subject perform the action or to have it acted upon. Generally, it is best to be consistent in voice. Shifting voice can disrupt the flow of a construction, as in this example:

Council members approved the new city tax levy, but the
(active)
anti-smoking ordinance was defeated by them.
(passive)

This awkward sentence uses two subjects and switches unnecessarily from active to passive voice. It is much simpler to stay with one subject and one voice:

Council members approved the new city tax levy but defeated the
(subject) (active) (active)
anti-smoking ordinance.

4. Unnecessarily changing subjects.

One never should argue with a referee; people should know that.

Besides creating a stilted construction with both singular and plural subjects, the writer is also wasting words. The sentence would read better with one focused subject:

People should know never to argue with a referee.

5. Unnecessarily changing tenses.

In general, verb tenses should agree within a sentence or a paragraph. But it's unreasonable to think that you cannot shift verb tenses in the same sentence or paragraph. In fact, you may need to change tenses to show correct sequence and historical context:

Although she was a reserve guard last year, Lizzie now rides the
(past tense) (pres. tense)
bench only after her deadly three-pointers have given her
(pres. perfect tense)
basketball team a comfortable edge.

This is a correct tense sequence. The two shifts make sense because they permit us to understand a chronology. Words such as *although*

and *after* help us shift tense smoothly. That smooth flow, however, does **not** exist in this sentence:

Billy is a poor basketball player, and no amount of practice was going to make him any better.

This is a confusing shift. The time-warping verbs cause the reader to lose a sense of chronology.

In journalistic style, much reporting is done in the past tense. For the sake of immediacy, however, many headlines are written in the present tense. This is sometimes referred to as the *historical present*:

Headline: Forest Fires Threaten Resort Community
LOS ANGELES—Spurred on by high winds and low humidity, three separate fires in the Angeles National Forest grew to more than 20,000 acres and threatened the luxury resort community of Peach Blossom.

Many news writers use the historical present to create an effect of immediacy or to show that an event, statement or condition is ongoing. The present tense often appears in the lead paragraph, then the writer shifts to the past tense as the story continues:

WASHINGTON—The president says he will not be moved.

At a press conference today in the Rose Garden, he threatened to veto a Senate bill that would slash defense spending.

Another example of the historical present typically occurs in accident stories. The change in tense in the second paragraph is correct and logical:

One woman was killed and three others were injured Tuesday night when their sports car skidded on icy roads on U.S. Highway 20 at Santiam Pass and collided with a log truck.

Dead is Sarah Jane Ridgeway, 28, of Creswell.

Remember that tense agreement is an attempt to preserve historical sequence and context. Avoid abrupt and illogical changes in tense. Above all, be consistent.

Sexism and Parallel Structure

Although sexism may seem more of a cultural and ethical issue than a grammatical one, equal treatment of gender also ensures parallelism in

writing. Sexism and other *-isms* are discussed in depth in Chapter 12. Here we will present a few examples of sexism as it relates to parallel structure and grammatical agreement.

1. The use of the generic *he* when referring to a noun of unknown gender.

A lawyer should know what is best for his clients.

(Take a look at law school enrollments today—the majority of students are women! However, you simply don’t “pick” a gender because it wins the population race. A realistic choice is to begin with plural *lawyers* so your pronoun [*their*] does not have to be gender-specific.)

2. Presumed maleness of certain nouns representing a position or class, even if it appears ludicrous.

Elizabeth is the best newsman in the chain.

3. Demeaning or unequal treatment of the sexes.

Helen Johnson, a pert and trim divorced mother of three, was the surprise winner in a runoff election against millionaire construction magnate Harold Smythe.

(Imbalance and stereotyping occur in such sentences. Why focus on the physical and marital aspects of the woman and on the wealth and position of the man? Keep it equal—keep it parallel.)

4. The use of courtesy titles (*Miss*, *Mrs.*, *Ms.*) for women as an indication of marital status when the only courtesy title available for men (*Mr.*) reflects no such status.

This is why, for many publications today, only last names are used in second reference, as in

Johnson refused to criticize Smythe’s campaign tactics.

Parallel structure is one of the main building blocks of sentence clarity. Don’t think of it as restrictive or rigid. In fact, parallel structure can give great power and creativity to your work. It can make your writing orderly and easily understood.

Achieving grammatical harmony, whether correctly matching subject and verb or treating gender references equally, will bring coherence and order to your writing. Your readers will appreciate it.

Oh—about that quiz at the beginning of the chapter. Here are the correct answers:

1. One of the biggest challenges in grammar **is** maintaining harmony in sentence elements.
2. “Agreement” is one of those grammatical trouble spots that **confuse** many writers.
3. A team of writers **has** agreed on **its** list of changes to the screenplay.

Subjects and antecedents: Keep your eyes on them!

Case: It's All About Relationships

Who, whom, whose.

She, her, hers.

Tommy, Tommy's.

These eight words reveal a lot about *case*, the forms that pronouns and nouns take depending on their role in a sentence. As with agreement (Chapter 6), case also contributes to sentence harmony by maintaining proper grammatical relationships. These relationships require a change in form for pronouns in three instances and for nouns in only one. Sounds manageable, yes?

Let's begin with pronouns. They have three forms: nominative (also known as *subjective*), objective and possessive. The relative pronoun *who* and the personal pronoun *she* illustrate these forms:

- **Nominative**, as the subject of the sentence:

Who borrowed my car without telling me?

She won the tennis match easily.

- **Objective**, as the object or receiver of action:

Whom did the committee select as its treasurer?

(Remember—subjects aren't always at the beginning of a sentence. Here, the subject is *committee*, which makes *whom* the direct object of the verb *select*.)

This should be an easy assignment for her.

(In this sentence, *her* is the object of the preposition *for*.)

- **Possessive**, to modify a noun:

It's uncertain whose essay will win the competition.
(modifies noun *essay*)

The expedition leader said the decision to proceed was hers.
(Modifies the noun *decision*—note no apostrophe here!)

The press applauded Tommy's decision to lead the charity drive.
(Modifies noun *decision*—yes, a proper noun can modify another noun. Happily, nouns have only one case change, in the possessive, and unlike most pronouns, that change requires the use of an apostrophe.)

All this seems fairly straightforward, but unfortunately, errors in case usage are distressingly common. For example:

Between you and I, this test is a cinch.
(Writer fails to use objective case *me* as object of preposition *between*.)

Her and I are going to the mall today.
(*Her* is in the objective case in this erroneous sentence, yet it is acting as a subject—and so, of course, it must be in the nominative case, *she*. This not-uncommon error reflects a lack of understanding of subject and object in a sentence.)

■ Nouns Change Only in the Possessive Case

Case is much less complicated for nouns because they change only in their possessive form. When a noun changes to a possessive, it requires an apostrophe; that is not the case for most pronouns. Here is an example of the correct use of both a noun possessive and the possessive of the pronoun *it*:

Tommy's decision will be judged on its merits.
(noun—poss.) (pronoun—poss.)

Let's examine how cases are used for pronouns and nouns.

NOMINATIVE CASE

When you think of the *nominative case*, think *subject and anything that relates directly to the subject of a sentence*. So, the subject of a sentence, the predicate nominative of a linking verb (p. 31) and a subject's

appositive (a word, phrase or clause related to the subject) all are in the nominative case:

Tommy is an amazing musician.

(noun as subject)

She plunged into the icy waters to rescue the child.

(pronoun as subject)

It was he who called the police.

(Pronoun *he* is in nominative case as predicate nominative of linking verb. This sounds pretty formal, we know, but you can understand the meaning that *he* called the police.)

We dreamers still have to work.

(Pronoun *we* is supplemented or “complemented” by *dreamers*, which makes that noun an appositive. So, both *we* and *dreamers* serve as subject of the sentence. Therefore, *we* is in the nominative case.)

The nominative case can be used more than once in a sentence: It appears in every clause. Here is an example of a compound–complex sentence (see p. 51), with pronouns serving as both a subject and a predicate nominative of a linking verb:

We must fight this tyranny at every turn; it is we who must fight the
(subject) (pred. nominative)

oppression of this regime.

Note that the relative pronoun *who* (in the third clause) refers to *we*. That is why *who* stays in the nominative case, rather than changing to *whom* (objective) or *whose* (possessive).

Use of Nominative with Linking Verbs

It's **me**.

That's **him**.

These sentences have been acceptable in colloquial speech for years, and so you may be unhappily surprised to learn that they are ungrammatical.

It is I is the correct construction. Don't worry: We are not suggesting that you start talking this way. We are suggesting, however, that writing demands an adherence to grammatical rules that casual speech does not.

The following sentence is precise—and correct:

It was she who broke the story.

Because the pronoun (*she*) follows a linking verb, you might be tempted to think it belongs in the objective case. It doesn't. *She* is renaming or further defining the subject, *it*. The nominative case is called for. Keep in mind that such a construction is not a paragon of clear, concise writing; it is more direct to say:

She broke the story.

or, for more precision and detail:

Susan Butler, fresh out of journalism school, broke the story of the judicial scandal.

Try to separate the rules for informal, colloquial speech from those for formal, permanent writing. Although informal style is creeping into some writing, we suggest that you seek a ruling from your colleagues.

Selecting *Who* in Complex Constructions

Although there are pressures to make the *who/whom* choice more liberal, we believe that writers should be precise with these choices. Most of us have little difficulty recognizing the correct use of *who* when it is the simple subject of a simple clause:

The astronauts, who had trained for this mission for three years, were understandably disappointed about its cancellation.

But when the true subject *who* is separated from its verb, the possibility of case error increases. Note this *incorrect* example:

The candidate whom the media said was convicted for fraud 20 years ago has resigned.

Whom is not the object of *the media said*. The sentence can be analyzed this way to show why the correct choice is *who*:

The candidate . . . has resigned
(independent clause)

who . . . was convicted
(subordinate clause)

the media said
(parenthetical information to provide a source)

As you recall from Chapters 5 and 6, you must match the number of the subject to the proper verb. You must also select the right case if the subject is a pronoun:

Who did he say won the race?
(*Who* won the race, he did say.)

***Who/Whom* in Prepositional Phrases**

A pronoun in a prepositional phrase is always in the objective case because it is generally the object of a preposition, as in “To *whom* did you wish to speak?” (see p. 91). But there are exceptions when a preposition controls an entire clause.

Sometimes a preposition will be a linking device, much like a conjunction or a relative pronoun. Look to the clause that follows to determine whether the pronoun is acting as subject or object:

The radio station will award \$5,000 in cash to *whoever* submits
(independent clause) (pronoun in nom. case)
the first correct answer to its “mystery question.”

Although the object of a preposition normally takes the objective case, the presence of an entire clause connected to the preposition changes all the rules. All clauses need a subject, either stated or implied. Hence, we use *whoever* in the preceding sentence as the subject of the clause (using the preposition *to* as a linking device). The nominative choice is clearer when the sentence is rewritten for analysis:

Whoever has a plan for police reform can meet with the mayor.

Here’s another example:

He discussed the end of the world with *whoever* would listen.

Note the two clauses:

He discussed/*whoever* would listen.

Case in *Than* Clauses

Remember our discussion of comparatives in the section on adjectives and adverbs? Case is an important component in certain clauses when these comparisons are being made, as in

He is smarter than I.

Than is frequently a conjunction. As you'll recall, conjunctions connect whole clauses and phrases. Because the second clause in a comparison is often implied, you must mentally complete the thought to determine proper case:

He is smarter than I (am smart).

In this sentence the nominative case *I* is required because that pronoun is the subject of the implied clause. *Than* can also be a preposition, however, as in this example:

There is no better snowboarder than her.

You can see that *than* is not a conjunction here because in this sentence the comparison ends with *her*. It doesn't continue with this additional information

There is no better snowboarder than she is a snowboarder.

Tacking on *than she is a snowboarder* doesn't make sense because the writer is actually expressing a superlative, not a comparative.

Yes, this is another example of why good writers must master the parts of speech!

OBJECTIVE CASE

Personal pronouns (*I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they*) and the relative and interrogative pronoun *who* also change form when used in the objective case.

	Personal Pronouns	Relative or Interrogative Pronoun
<i>Singular:</i>	me, you, him/her/it	whom
<i>Plural:</i>	us, you, them	whom

The Personal Pronoun in the Objective Case

Personal pronouns in the objective case have the following uses:

- As the direct or indirect object of a verb or verbal:

The speeding car hit him in the crosswalk.
(dir. obj.)

Superintendent Wilson gave her a certificate of merit.
(indir. obj.) (dir. obj.)

Giving Tommy and her all those gifts was a big mistake.
(object of verbal)

Giving Tommy and her all those gifts is a gerund phrase (a verbal) that acts as the complete subject of the sentence. *Tommy and her* is the object of the gerund *Giving*. It receives the so-called action of the gerund, however, and therefore must be in the objective case. We can understand any confusion about this—how can a subject have an object? Just remember that pronouns that follow a gerund in its phrase must be in the objective case.

- As the object of a preposition:

Between you and me, he won't be around here for long.
(prep.) (obj. of prep.)

Tommy says there is no better lacrosse player than her.
(preposition and object)

See p. 37 on comparatives.

- With an appositive that is in the objective case:

Guards dragged us reporters out of the convention hall.
(pronoun *us* and appositive *reporters* as direct object)

She gave the cleaning job to us students.
(pronoun *us* and appositive *students* as obj. of preposition)

The Proper Use of *Whom*

The relative and interrogative pronoun *who* changes to *whom* in the objective case. The *who/whom* choice is one of the more confusing ones in grammar, but it is easier if you analyze the sentence carefully. Let's look at a few examples:

Whom will the union support in the primary election?
(dir. obj.) (subj.)

Remember that a direct object doesn't always follow the subject and verb. It can appear before the subject, as in the preceding example. To make the *who/whom* choice easier, mentally reorder the sentence as a statement rather than a question:

The union will support whom. . . .

Now consider this more complex sentence:

She is the only candidate **whom** the union supports.

First, identify the two subjects, two verbs, one predicate nominative and one direct object in this sentence:

She is the only candidate the union supports whom
 (subj.) (verb) (pred. nom.) (subj.) (verb) (dir. object)

So, we have two clauses—one independent, one dependent. The second clause as rewritten clearly shows *whom* (objective case) as a direct object.

Here’s another example:

Students can’t agree on whom to send to the dean to present
 (object of verbal—an infinitive)
 their demands.

(See p. 91 for our discussion on objects of verbals.)

A final example for this section:

Do you know whom to contact in the event of a grammatical crisis?

POSSESSIVE CASE

We focus on three areas here: (1) the form and use of pronouns as possessives, (2) nouns as possessives and (3) the misuse of descriptive nouns as possessives.

Form and Use of Possessive Pronouns

Personal pronouns have these possessive forms:

my, mine, our, ours, your, yours
 his, her, hers, its, their, theirs

Is this my book?
 (modifies noun *book*)

No, it is mine.
 (represents noun *book*)

Is this your book?
 (modifies noun)

No, it is yours.
(represents noun)

Note that an apostrophe is not needed with the possessive personal pronouns. This sentence contains two errors:

This book is not your's; its mine.

The correct version is:

This book is not yours; it's mine.

It's, of course, is the contraction for *it is*.

Some indefinite pronouns, however, such as *anyone*, *one*, *everyone*, *everybody*, *another* and *someone*, do require apostrophes in the possessive form:

One's reach should exceed her grasp.

This is everyone's problem, believe me.

“Possessing” a gerund

When a personal pronoun modifies a gerund in a sentence, the possessive case is necessary because it shows possession or ownership by the gerund, which always acts as a noun.

I certainly understand his supporting the company's budget
(pron.) (gerund phrase as direct object)
priorities.

In this sentence *his* modifies the gerund *supporting*, which is part of the direct object. Because a gerund is a noun, it is necessary to use its pronoun in the possessive case. The rule makes sense because nouns are linked with possessive pronouns to show modification.

The *who/whose* relationship

The relative pronoun *who* also has a possessive form: *whose*. It does not take an apostrophe even though it modifies a noun:

Billy is the only programmer whose application has been accepted.

Note that the interrogative pronoun *who* also uses *whose* as its possessive form:

Whose film will be screened tomorrow?

Some writers struggle with the *who's/whose* distinction. Like *it's*, *who's* is a *contraction*—a compression of two words (in this case, *who is*). It is a subject and a verb, not a possessive. If you can read *to whom* into a sentence with your *whose* selection, you're on the right track:

Whose tofu is this?

(To whom does this tofu belong?)

Who's cooking the tofu tonight?

(Who is cooking the tofu tonight?)

More about contractions

Contractions can be troublesome with personal pronouns as well. Some of the most common errors involve misuse of *its/it's*, *your/you're* and *their/they're*. Note these correct usages for this trio:

The magazine has decided to replace its restaurant reviewer.
(possessive)

The publisher believes it's time for a change.
(contraction of *it* and *is*)

Your complimentary tickets are at the box office.
(possessive)

You're going to love this new musical!
(contraction of *you* and *are*)

Their poetry readings will be repeated next weekend.
(possessive)

Paul and Bill say they're ready to run a marathon.
(contraction of *they* and *are*)

You can add the expletive *there* to the *their/they're* confusion:

The junta announced that there would be no elections this year.

There's a moon out tonight.

Keep this sentence in mind as you consider these *they're/there/their* choices:

They're convinced there are no obstacles to their success.

Nouns as Possessives

When creating possessives for nouns, some writers get confused about the use of an apostrophe with an *s*. There are more than a few rules, but they are not difficult. Here are eight simple ones, consistent with wire service style, for forming possessives of singular and plural nouns.

■ **If a singular noun does not end in *s*, add 's.**

the governor's speech

Margaret's circle of friends

Some guides argue that nouns ending in *ce*, *x* or *z* (and carrying an *s* or *sh* sound) should have an apostrophe at the end of the word without an *s*. However, it is more common for such words to take an 's for simple possession:

science's effect on the environment

the fox's den

Hertz's rental rules

Note the exception in the following rule for those possessives that precede a word beginning with *s*:

■ **If a singular common noun ends in *s*, add 's unless the next word begins with *s*. If the next word begins with *s*, add an apostrophe only. (This includes words with *s* and *sh* sounds.)**

the boss's evaluation

but:

the boss' swagger

the witness's testimony

but:

the witness' story

science's discoveries

but:

for science' sake

- If a **singular proper noun** ends in *s*, add an apostrophe only.

Clinton's book deal

but:

Paris' night life

- If a noun is plural in form and ends in *s*, add an apostrophe only, even if the intended meaning of the word (such as *mathematics*) is singular.

poems' meanings

measles' misery

Marine Corps' spirit

- If a plural noun does **not** end in *s*, add *'s*.

children's rights

oxen's yoke

media's missteps (media is the plural of medium)

- If there is joint possession of a noun (both modify the same word), use the correct possessive form for the possessive closest to that noun.

Mutt and Jeff's friendship

her husband and children's trust fund

- If there is separate possession of the same noun, use the correct possessive form for each word.

Billy's and Tom's DVD collections

Zambia's and Paraguay's governments

- In a compound construction, use the correct possessive form for the word closest to the noun. Avoid possessives with compound plurals.

Society of Friends' gathering

father-in-law's friendship

attorney general's opinion

Descriptive Nouns: No Possession Needed

Writers sometimes use nouns as a descriptive tool. In these instances, the possessive form is not needed because the writer does not want to stress ownership.

Descriptive Nouns

government policy

wine cellar

citizens band radio

Possessive Nouns

our government's priorities

wine's bouquet

citizen's arrest

It may be appropriate to join two nouns for the purposes of description, but it will not always work. Sometimes the attempt results in awkward phrasing:

police report on race harassment

Police, a noun, works smoothly with the other noun, *report*, but you can see the awkwardness with the noun *race* when an available adjective can work much better:

police report on racial harassment

The “Reflexive” Problem

A *reflexive* pronoun (*himself, herself, itself, myself, ourselves, yourself*) “reflects” a personal pronoun to underscore it, as in this sentence:

Can you picture yourself as a movie star?

Somewhat related to the reflexive is a pronoun used to intensify or emphasize:

I myself wrote this screenplay.

Granted, this seems overdone, but it is grammatically acceptable. The problem occurs when these pronouns are not accompanied by the original personal pronoun in a sentence:

I want to throw a party for my friends and myself.

or:

Tommy and myself are going to the mall.

This is awkward and stilted writing. A quick edit fixes it:

I want to throw a party for my friends and me.

Tommy and I are going to the mall.

We hope you can see how case is connected to agreement—and to harmony. Proper use of case adds clarity to your writing. It reflects a polish, an attention to detail. This area may take time to master, but it's worth the effort!

Punctuation: Graceful Movements, Confident Stops

How much easier it would be for writers if we could look over the shoulders of our readers and explain the flow of every sentence. Look! We want you to pause here. See? We mean to emphasize this point. Hey! This adverb and adjective need to be linked. But writers can't give that kind of help. The work itself must provide all the clues to how it should be read. So, just as composers use a system of marks to note the speed and rhythm of music, writers use punctuation.

Punctuation provides a system of stops and starts, of controlled pauses and of forward motion. The right amount of punctuation works quietly in the background, with grace and elegance, to clarify ideas and determine content exactly as the writer intends.

Edgar Allan Poe, a master of rhythm and sound, said it simply: "The writer who neglects punctuation, or mispunctuates, is liable to be misunderstood."

Consider this example of insufficient punctuation:

When the fish are biting boaters flock to the lake.

The sentence moves the reader too quickly to the lake, where it seems that fish are biting the boaters. Now *that* would make the evening news. A well-placed comma clarifies the real meaning of the sentence:

When the fish are biting, boaters flock to the lake.

Punctuation marks establish a proper relationship between words and their meter, imparting meaning and guiding the reader from one idea to the next. Without punctuation, we have only strings of

words whose unchecked configurations mask meaning. We can't write effectively without punctuation. We certainly would spoil our work if we used those marks incorrectly.

SOME BASIC GUIDELINES

Here's a quick review of our punctuation system:

- A *period* ends a sentence.
- A *comma*, a subtle mark, creates a short pause between sentence elements.
- A *semicolon* slows the reader; it isn't powerful enough to completely stop.
- A *colon* announces the following: a list, a fragment, a sentence, or a quotation.
- A *dash*—maligned by purists but used frequently in journalism—creates a more abrupt break than the comma.
- *Quotation marks* are dedicated “record keepers.” They announce somebody's exact words, signify book titles and indicate nicknames, among other things.
- A *hyphen* is well-used in our language. It joins modifiers that belong together.
- An *apostrophe* can't be praised enough for being grammar's helper with subject-verb contractions and with the possessive case.
- An *ellipsis* warns us . . . something is missing.
- *Parentheses* (they look like this) are used to clarify a point or add an aside without (we hope) hampering sentence rhythm.
- Do you really need an explanation of the *question mark*?
- If you do, we shall indicate our astonishment with another way to end a sentence—the *exclamation mark*!

Punctuation marks prevent confusion and create rhythm. Although writers may debate their usage, there are logical, consistent rules to follow. To join the discussion, you must understand sentence construction. For a complete review, please consult Chapter 5.

PERIOD

The *period* closes a statement. It signals clearly that the action of one sentence has stopped before the next begins. Imagine how confusing sentences (and thoughts) would be without periods:

An eight-car collision stopped traffic for seven hours on the northbound side of Interstate 5 near Portland snow and ice on the overpass caused two drivers to lose control of their vehicles transportation officials say the debris will be cleared by tomorrow

Without a period, the logical pattern of ideas takes too much work to discern. A period establishes the basic unit of composition, the sentence, separating one complete thought from the next.

The period has two main uses in writing.

- **Use a period to end a sentence that is neither interrogative (?) nor exclamatory (!).**

Coach Thomas told the umpire to see an optometrist immediately.

- **Use a period to create certain abbreviations and to indicate decimals.**

The \$2.5-million package arrived C.O.D. at the home office.

Abbreviations are space savers, and periods help signal these shortcuts. Not all abbreviations, however, require periods. Acronyms (abbreviations without punctuation, which are pronounceable words—for example, *UNESCO* and *AIDS*), names of certain organizations and government agencies (*NBC*, *UAW*, *FBI* and *CIA*), and abbreviations of technical words (*mph* and *rpm*)—do not require periods. To learn which abbreviations use periods and which ones don't, consult a dictionary or your publication's stylebook.

When Not to Use a Period

- **Do not use a period outside quotation marks or outside an ending parenthesis if the information forms a complete sentence.**

Note these correct uses of periods:

The official announced, “All applications will be rejected if received without the \$25 fee.”

The incumbent has a memorable history of vetoes. (She rejected more than 75 bills in the last legislative session.)

COMMA

The *comma* is crucial to sentence rhythm and sense. A sentence lumbers and stumbles toward clarity with too many commas; with too few, it races past comprehension. Let's examine proper use of the comma and then look at some of its inappropriate uses. Note: The comma is notorious for its misuse, so please examine this section carefully!

■ Use a comma to separate two independent clauses connected by a coordinating conjunction.

The movie received great critical acclaim, but it flopped at the box office.

Coordinating conjunctions include *or*, *and*, *nor*, *but*, *yet* and *so*. A comma is placed before the coordinating conjunction to link two independent clauses that can stand alone as complete sentences. Journalistic style favors dropping the comma if both independent clauses of the sentence are short and uncomplicated (with no long prepositional or dependent clauses, for instance) and meaning is unambiguous:

The contestant ate twelve hot dogs but he quickly fell ill.

When in doubt about joining two independent clauses, leave the comma in.

■ Use a comma to set off long introductory clauses and phrases and some shorter clauses and phrases that would be confusing without it.

After three weeks of daily one-hour visits to the hot springs, he had cured his problem of chronic cold feet.

To Tom Hanks, Oscar is a familiar name.

You can omit the comma for some short clauses and phrases if no run-on occurs in the sentence—that is, if the meaning of the introductory segment remains distinct from the rest of the sentence. For example, a comma is unnecessary here:

After midnight the library turned into a nightclub.

- Use commas to set off nonrestrictive (nonessential) clauses, phrases and modifiers from the rest of the sentence.

Nonrestrictive (Nonessential)

Nonrestrictive clauses, phrases and words *require* commas because they are incidental to the sentence. That is, those clauses could be removed from the sentence with little if any loss to meaning or context.

The rock band, which often plays in southwestern Texas, instituted new security measures to protect its performers from groupies.

Sentence meaning remains the same when the underlined subordinate clause is removed. (Where the band plays is not essential to understanding the fact of security measures.) The underlined phrase is called an *appositive*—a word or phrase that further defines the word that precedes it. It is not essential to the sentence but adds information and context.

The incumbent, who travels on her own plane, will visit nine senior centers in three states this weekend to talk about medical insurance.

Any other nonessential, amplifying pieces of information could have been substituted for the subordinated clause, such as *who depends on the senior citizen vote*. The existing clause could be removed, and an understandable, complete sentence remains.

Restrictive (Essential)

Clauses, phrases or words that are essential to the meaning of the sentence are called *restrictive*. They *need not be* set off with commas from the rest of the sentence. Notice how these examples differ from the nonrestrictive constructions:

The team that wore red uniforms started its practice earlier than the team wearing blue ones.

The three men who hijacked a city bus died when they crashed it into a police blockade.

The subordinate clause *who hijacked a city bus* limits the meaning of the sentence. One test to determine restrictive meaning is to read the sentence

without the clause in question. If you find yourself trying to fill in the meaning of the sentence, that clause is essential. Consider the preceding example:

The three men died when they crashed into a police blockade.

This clearly requires its accompanying clause to make the sentence more complete, more understandable. (What men? What did they do?) For this reason the clause *who hijacked a city bus* should **not** be set off by commas.

Here's another example:

The water main that broke last night flooded the entire southeast side of the city.

Not all water mains broke last night. Because the subordinate clause *that broke last night* is essential to the meaning of the sentence, no commas should be used.

Note that in a restrictive clause the pronoun *that* is used instead of *which*. If the clause is not essential to the meaning of the sentence but simply provides added detail, use *which* and set off the clause with commas. (See the entry in Part 2 for *that/which/who*.)

■ Use commas to separate items in a series.

The toddler stuffed seven pebbles, three cookies, two rubber balls and one frog in her pocket.

Journalistic writing favors this rule for use of the *serial comma*: When the last item in a series is connected by a coordinating conjunction, the comma should be omitted before that conjunction. This is especially true when the series is short or uncomplicated. If the series is made up of more than simple adjective–noun combinations, however, the comma can be inserted before the conjunction to eliminate confusion:

Union officials this morning said they would bargain vigorously for the right to negotiate pension fund investments, for an expanded process of grievance procedures, and for binding arbitration of all contract matters not settled within 90 days of the start of negotiations.

Although rare in journalistic writing, the serial comma appears more frequently in formal composition, novels and academic texts.

■ Use commas to separate coordinate adjectives.

When a noun is preceded by a string of adjectives, apply this two-part test to determine whether those modifiers are of equal rank and need to be separated by commas: Can you use these adjectives interchangeably? Can you successfully insert the conjunction *and* between them and have the sentence make sense? If so, these adjectives are coordinate and *require* a comma.

Given this test, the modifiers in the following sentence *need* a comma:

Stocks rose today in frantic, irrational trading.

(You can read “frantic *and* irrational” into this sentence, so the comma is necessary.)

Meteorologists forecast another cold, dreary Midwestern night.

(You can read “cold *and* dreary” into this sentence. They modify *Midwestern night* equally, so they are considered coordinate. The comma is necessary.)

But what about this sentence?

Meteorologists forecast another cold Midwestern night.

(You can’t read “cold *and* Midwestern night” into this construction, so the adjectives need not be separated by a comma. In fact, “cold” actually modifies “Midwestern night.”)

■ Use commas to set off parenthetical expressions.

A *parenthetical expression* is an addition or “aside” to the main thought. It gives extra information without disrupting the flow of the sentence:

The first day of the bird-watching season, often a flurry of activity, was unusually quiet this year.

The snow, encrusted with a thin skin of ice, crunched lightly under her boots.

The underlined statements could be put in parentheses, but that might be too formal and stilted. Commas create shorter pauses while maintaining the flow.

■ Use commas when the absence of a pause can cause confusion.

For the senator, going fishing for three hours is vacation enough.

Sitting below sea level, the city obviously needed a complicated system of sump pumps.

In the preceding examples it would be a false economy to waive comma use. The pause is necessary for clarity.

■ **Use commas to set off participial phrases that modify some part of the independent clause.**

The Senate adjourned today, having defeated an attempt to extend
(participial phrase modifies *Senate*)
the session.

Various stylebooks list many other examples of comma use (and nonuse). Some may be obvious to you:

- To separate numbers in the thousands and above: 1,250 votes
- To distinguish a city from its state: He lives in Wheeling, West Virginia.
- To separate a direct address from a sentence: Ozzie, will you answer the door?

Comma Misuse

Comma misuse creates some of the worst rhythm problems in sentences. The comma is designed to improve the flow of prose, not impede it, but poor construction and comma overuse often combine to create staccato passages, characterized by disconnected parts and sounds. Writers and editors must be careful to avoid excessive use of the comma. Here are some helpful rules:

■ **Do not use a comma to separate two independent clauses that are *not* joined by a coordinating conjunction.**

Violating this rule produces the *comma splice*, one of the most common errors in punctuation. It looks like this:

The unemployment rate continues to drop, the rate of inflation remains constant.

The island residents rejected a proposal for a new hotel, they asked for an aquarium instead.

Using a comma to link two independent clauses (which could stand alone as separate sentences) offers an inadequate pause in thought and causes a run-on sentence. We recommend that you either break the sentence in two or do one of the following:

- Use a semicolon to link the clauses.

The unemployment rate continues to drop; the rate of inflation remains constant.

- Use a coordinating conjunction with a comma.

The island residents rejected a proposal for a new hotel, and they asked for an aquarium instead.

■ Do not use a comma to separate a compound predicate.

A compound predicate (two or more verbs that serve the same subject) does not need a comma because it is part of the same clause:

The judge fined the men \$500 and ordered them to perform 40
 (subj.) (verb #1) (verb #2)
 hours of community service.

As you can see, “The judge” has performed two actions within the same clause. And as we hope you remember from Chapter 5, that makes this construction a simple sentence.

■ Do not use a comma to introduce a subordinate clause.

The use of a comma before *because* is one of the biggest offenders. *Because* is a *subordinating conjunction*—it introduces a dependent clause:

The studio executive rejected the movie idea because she wanted a guaranteed blockbuster.

No comma is needed here because the conjunction does not coordinate equal clauses. (Did you notice the lack of a comma in the previous sentence as well?) That is why *and*, *but* and *or* often require commas; they are called coordinating conjunctions because they link clauses of equal weight. (See “Conjunctions” in Chapter 4 for a list of conjunctions that do not coordinate.)

Note that if the subordinate clause is used at the beginning of the sentence, a comma is required:

Because he wanted a guaranteed blockbuster, the studio executive rejected the movie idea.

Can you detect a difference in rhythm between *because* at the beginning of a sentence and *because* in the middle of it?

■ **Do not use a comma to separate a subject from its predicate or object.**

This is one of the most common errors made by inexperienced writers. Sentences with restrictive clauses, phrases or words between the subject and the predicate sometimes confuse writers into putting a comma before the predicate. Even relatively simple subjects fall prey to this error. Here's what *not* to do:

The inmate who was last seen in the laundry room, escaped today in a delivery truck.

Knowing rules of grammar, will ensure your credibility as a writer.

In the preceding examples the comma is unnecessary. Always be sure the subject of the sentence has a clear, unobstructed route to its predicate when restrictive (essential) elements mark the pathway.

■ **Do not use a comma to separate a noun or a pronoun from its reflexive.**

A *reflexive* is any of the “self” pronouns (*myself, himself*) used to intensify or accent the noun or pronoun preceding it. A comma is not needed to set off the reflexive:

The coach himself will kick off the first ball of the season.

■ **Do not use a comma between a word and a phrase that amplifies it if it will create a “false series.”**

This sentence, as punctuated, is bound to cause confusion:

Rescuers discovered seven bodies, four office workers, two firefighters and one police officer.

Unless the writer meant to say that 14 people were discovered and that seven of them were dead, the comma use after *bodies* is wrong. A colon or dash would be more effective in separating the two ideas:

Rescuers discovered seven bodies—those of four office workers, two firefighters and one police officer.

■ **Do not use a comma to precede a partial quotation.**

The mayor says his opponent is “a rat dressed in weasel’s clothing.”

No comma is needed because the quoted material is the predicate nominative of the verb *is*. Because the quoted material depends on the rest of the sentence for its context, that material should not be set off by a comma.

If the quotation is a full sentence, however, it should be preceded by a comma:

The counselor said, “The camper with the best-made bed is excused from kitchen detail for a week.”

Remember: Good writers use commas for clarity and meter. If your sentences contain a clutter of commas, take heed. Perhaps the sentences are too long and too busy. Be crisp, be sparing—and follow the rules of proper use.

SEMICOLON

.....

The *semicolon* indicates a longer break than a comma but not the full stop of a period. It is more inflexible than the comma or the period and carries a grammatical formality that some writers like to avoid. For this reason, perhaps, the semicolon is rarely used in media writing, especially when it is used to join two independent clauses without a coordinating conjunction. We agree, so we rarely use semicolons.

Writers sometimes opt for two separate and shorter sentences rather than joining two independent clauses with a semicolon. They may choose to break up a series of thoughts normally punctuated by semicolons to avoid long clauses and phrases. They equate the “full stop” with simplicity and clarity. But the semicolon works when the writer

wants the chime of one idea to fall away for a beat before the next rings out—a lingering that is absent with a period.

Here are four guidelines to help you properly employ the semicolon:

■ **Use a semicolon to join independent clauses not connected by a coordinating conjunction.**

(Note: This is a proper rule, but there are more graceful ways to present coordinated or “equal” thoughts.)

Sarah will contest the election results; she says she will accept the outcome of a “properly supervised” recount.

If those two clauses had been connected with the coordinating conjunction *but*, a comma would have sufficed:

. . . election results, but she says she . . .

Some writers prefer the use of the coordinating conjunction because it gives more specific direction to the reader. Others would look at these two long clauses and break them into two sentences.

Words like *however*, *moreover*, *nevertheless* and *therefore* are not coordinating conjunctions. They are *conjunctive adverbs*. They do not perform the linking function of a conjunction and cannot coordinate clauses of equal rank. When a conjunctive adverb separates two independent clauses, a semicolon is required.

The flowers of daylilies last only a day; nevertheless, the numerous buds on one stem make them popular garden plants.

As we mentioned in the “Comma Misuse” section, using a comma here to separate the two clauses would create a comma splice.

Before we continue, we must issue a word of caution: We urge you to avoid using a semicolon to connect two independent clauses, even though it is grammatically correct. If you must use it, be sure that the two clauses actually need some connection and that they wouldn’t be better off as separate sentences. For example, don’t write:

The car slid off the narrow roadway into a muddy embankment;
police arrived hours later to find that no one had survived.

when you could write:

The car slid off the narrow roadway into a muddy embankment.
When police arrived hours later, they found three bodies in the overturned vehicle.

As you can see, merging two strong thoughts into one construction can be economical, but it may not give you the completeness and creativity that two sentences can. Think of the semicolon as a clarifier, not an economizer.

■ **Use a semicolon to link more than two independent clauses in a series.**

Semicolons are needed in compound sentences when more than two independent clauses are linked in a series—even when the last part of the series is connected by a coordinating conjunction:

We will find proper funding for our schools; we will not abandon our commitment to greater access to higher education; and we will press for a new income tax measure to fully fund our programs.

■ **Use a semicolon to separate internally punctuated independent clauses joined by a coordinating conjunction.**

When you punctuate a clause internally with commas, you can't use a comma to separate that clause from another. A semicolon is needed to create a more abrupt stop:

The city council has approved the proposed levy, which will go to voters in May; but the mayor has indicated that she will campaign against it.

■ **Use a semicolon to set off parts of a series that also contain commas.**

Survivors of the early-morning avalanche are Stan Sarsgaard, 42, of San Francisco; his brother-in-law, Martin Fedler, 40, of Boise, Idaho; and their guide, Deb Walters, 30, of Fairbanks, Alaska.

The main function of the semicolon in this example is organization. It is helpful because it clarifies boundaries in a series better than a comma so that the parts remain distinct.

To recap: The semicolon is generally used in more formal writing. However, in all forms, the semicolon creates a more distinct break in thought without bringing the sentence to a complete stop. It is essential in joining independent clauses that are not connected with a coordinating conjunction.

COLON

The *colon* presents ideas with a flourish: It announces. It ushers in complete sentences, lists, quotations and dialogue.

Proper Use of the Colon

When the colon is used to introduce a complete sentence, the first word of that sentence should be capitalized:

Tracy knew this for sure: She was ready to start a new life.

When a colon is used to introduce a word, phrase or clause that is not a complete sentence, the first word following the colon should *not* be capitalized:

In the movie classic “The Graduate,” Dustin Hoffman learned the one word that would guarantee a successful future: *plastics*.

Here is another thing I will never do: bungee-jump off the Verrazano Narrows Bridge.

Note these other functions of the colon:

■ Use a colon to introduce a quotation that is longer than one sentence.

The judge eyed the defendant and told him in words dripping with disdain: “Your disgusting conduct in my courtroom has mocked everything that is justice. I now invite you to accept our jail hospitality for the next 90 days.”

■ Use a colon to end a sentence that introduces a quotation in the next paragraph.

Here is the text of the president’s speech:

“Good evening, my fellow Americans. I appear before you tonight to report on the state of our nation. . . .”

■ Use colons to show the text of questions and answers.

This can take two forms:

Q: And then what happened?

A: She put the meat cleaver down and called the cops.

Sneed: Senator, I have done my best to contribute to this discussion.

Ervin: Somebody told me once when I was representing a case; he said, “You put up the best possible case for a guilty client!”

As you can see, the colon eliminates the need for quotation marks unless the dialogue itself quotes other material.

■ Use colons to show times and citations.

She ran the mile in 3:59:42.

Psalm 101:5 tells us of the danger of slander.

When Not to Use the Colon

■ Do not use a colon when introducing a short list without the words “*the following*.”

The voters have elected Larry, Curly and Moe.

■ Do not use a colon when introducing a direct quotation of one sentence or less. A comma is sufficient.

His parting refrain was always the same, “I’ll see you when I see you.”

■ Do not use a colon to separate an independent clause from a prepositional phrase that begins with *including*.

The Web site listed several jobs for journalists, including positions in magazine, newspaper and radio.

The proper punctuation mark to use before *including* is a comma.

DASH

The primary uses of a *dash* are to change direction and create emphasis. Journalists, however, can be rightfully accused of using the dash to excess or of using it when a comma, a colon or parentheses might be more skillfully employed. We believe that the dash should be used sparingly because it is a startling mark of punctuation. If used too often, it loses its impact. Let’s look at the two main uses of the dash in all writing.

■ **Use a dash to end a sentence with a surprising or ironic element.**

The tall, distinguished-looking man entered the country with a valid passport, two pieces of leather luggage, an antique Leica camera around his neck—and 16 ounces of uncut heroin in the heels of his alligator boots.

A comma here would not be as effective in changing meter and warning the reader of a break in thought. Using this reasoning, you would not want a dash in this less surprising sentence:

The ice cream parlors competed for customers with discount coupons, free sundae dishes and generous samples.

That series contains ordinary, unsurprising information. Adding a dash would give the sentence false drama.

■ **Use dashes to set off a long clause or a phrase that is in apposition to the main clause, when it makes the information clearer and more distinctive.**

The closing ceremonies of the Olympics—a dazzling spectacle of unrequited self-promotion—set off an explosion of self-congratulations at the network.

A comma usually suffices with a shorter appositive that does not require an abrupt break:

Baker, the Giants' far-ranging outfielder, silenced his critics with a rifle throw that cut down the speeding Thomas at home plate.

Dashes could also be used to set off both parenthetical expressions and a series of items in the middle of a sentence. We recommend restraint with these uses, however, and that you concentrate on the two main uses of the dash. The dash should be used only infrequently—make sure your reader will notice it!

QUOTATION MARKS

Quotation marks have several identities. They are a tool of truthfulness when they give a faithful reproduction of what was said. They can also be a weapon that belittles. For example, what impressions do quotation marks create in these sentences?

“I believe we can correct this situation,” the accountant said.
(This seems to be a straightforward reproduction of what was said.)

The company spokesperson said her firm could correct the
“situation.”
(Placement of quotation marks around *situation* makes us suspicious.)

What is so strange about this so-called situation? The quotation marks alert us to the possibility of another meaning. Let’s look at the appropriate use of quotation marks in writing and then see how other marks of punctuation are used with quotations.

Proper Use of Quotation Marks

- Use quotation marks to enclose direct quotations and to capture dialog.

“The next quarter earnings will determine whether the company will move strongly into the next decade or declare bankruptcy at the end of the year,” company president Bill Barnsett said.

“So, did you actually see the gun?” the defense attorney asked.

“No, well, I thought I did,” the defendant replied.

“I’ll take that as a no.”

Avoid the unnecessary use of partial quotations. Sometimes a paraphrase will do. So, instead of:

Board President Susan Butler said completion of a new power plant is necessary “to maintain our high bond rating.”

you might write:

Completion of a new power plant is necessary to preserve the board’s high bond rating, according to Board President Susan Butler.

The partial quotation works best if the language or style of what is quoted is distinctive or colorful. For example, it would be difficult to paraphrase this effectively:

Sen. Dennis Olson, R-Amity, compared the higher-education system to a dinosaur that’s “going to fall in the tar pits and become a fossil.”

Avoid putting quotation marks around single words if their use results in an inaccurate representation. We generally put these marks around unfamiliar terms on first reference, around slang words and around words used sarcastically or ironically. But don't overdo it!

A wage freeze is in effect.

but

His luck ran into a “freeze” at the track.

Jed Truett's dreams are a \$10-million business.

but

Tom Anderson's “dreams” have ruined those of elderly investors who spent their life savings on his worthless pyramid scheme.

- Use quotation marks for titles of books, lectures, movies, operas, plays, poems, songs, speeches, television shows and works of art. Do *not* use these marks for names of magazines, newspapers, reference books or the Bible.

“Jane Eyre”

“Fast Food Nation”

“Superman Returns”

“Il Trovatore”

But note:

Harper's

The Anniston Star

The Foundation Directory

- Use quotation marks for nicknames.

Paul “Bad Dog” Scheerer

“Bad Moon Rising” Davis

Use of Other Punctuation with Quotation Marks

One of the most frequently asked questions about quotation marks involves the placement of other punctuation marks with them. “Does the question mark go inside or outside?” Like so many aspects of grammar, that depends. (Remember, coping with uncertainty makes you stronger!) Here are your guidelines.

Punctuation that goes inside quotation marks

A bit of dogma first:

■ The period and comma always go inside quotation marks.

The defendant replied, “I refuse to answer on the grounds that it may incriminate me.”

“I have nothing to hide,” she said.

■ Question marks, exclamation marks and semicolons go inside quotation marks if they are part of the quoted material.

The surgeon asked, “How did you get seven quarters in your stomach?”

“Give me my dignity!” the prisoner pleaded.

Punctuation that goes outside quotation marks

■ Question marks, exclamation marks and semicolons go outside if they are not part of the quoted material.

Have you read “Being Your Own Best Friend”?

Whatever you do, don’t see “The Resurrection of Freddy”!

HYPHEN

Whereas the dash creates a break, the *hyphen* is a joiner. It is a tiny bridge that links words to indicate compound constructions and modifiers. Unfortunately, the hyphen can be as frustrating as it is useful. If you use it to join words that need to work as a unit, and if you use it to avoid confusion, the hyphen will serve you well.

■ **Use a hyphen to join compound modifiers that precede a noun unless that modifier is preceded by *very* or an *-ly* adverb.**

Compound modifiers belong together. They are not part of a series of adjectives and adverbs that can separately describe the word they are modifying. The components of a compound modifier actually modify themselves as they describe the noun:

a fair-weather friend

(This is a compound modifier. *Fair* doesn't modify *friend*. It modifies the other modifier, *weather*. Together they modify *friend*. The friend is fair-weathered, not fair and weathered, so we use the hyphen.)

a sluggish, unresponsive economy

(This is not a compound modifier. The economy is both sluggish *and* unresponsive. *Sluggish* doesn't modify *unresponsive*. No hyphen is needed.)

If you can insert the conjunction *and* between the modifiers and make sense of the new construction, you do not have a compound modifier. A *sluggish and unresponsive economy* sounds right, but a *fair and weather friend* does not. That should be your signal for a hyphen under this rule, unless the beginning of the compound modifier is *very* or an *-ly* adverb. These words are a clear signal to the reader that a compound modifier is coming.

No hyphen is needed with these phrases:

very influential author

warmly received guest

Most compound modifiers are also hyphenated when they follow a form of the linking verb *to be*. In that sense they continue to modify the subject. So, it is proper to write:

She is a well-known rock climber.

This punctuation is also correct:

The rock climber was well-known.

Be sure to make a distinction between a compound modifier and the same words used slightly differently but that don't modify anything. It will prevent the improper use of the hyphen:

Last-minute election returns propelled her to victory.

Last-minute modifies *election returns*. Note, however:

He filed for election at the last minute.

Last minute is the object of the preposition *in*. *Last* modifies only *minute*.

Be sure to identify all parts of a compound modifier. For example, it's not a *10 year-old* wine. It's a *10-year-old* wine.

■ Use a hyphen for certain prefixes and suffixes.

You'll need to consult a dictionary or stylebook in some cases. There are so many exceptions that you will never guess right all the time! For example, the Associated Press stresses this rule:

Hyphenate between the prefix and the following word if the prefix ends in a vowel and the next word begins with the same vowel (for example, *extra-attentive*; exceptions are *cooperate* and *coordinate*). Also hyphenate between the prefix and the following word if that word is capitalized (such as *super-Republican*).

Prefixes that generally take a hyphen include *all-*, *anti-*, *ex-*, *non-* and *pro-*. If you check a dictionary or a stylebook, however, you will find plenty of exceptions.

■ Use the hyphen for combinations when the preposition is omitted.

first-come, first-served basis

a 98-94 squeaker

the push-me, pull-you dilemma

APOSTROPHE

The *apostrophe's* role isn't difficult to demonstrate. In fact, we just did it in the previous sentence! As we discussed briefly in several previous chapters, the apostrophe is used to indicate the possessive case and to merge a subject and a verb to create a contraction. Examples:

Tom's knowledge of punctuation is enviable.

You can't do that with a semicolon!

Other Uses of the Apostrophe

We also use apostrophes to indicate that something has been omitted from a word or a number, as in

I love rock 'n roll.
(*'n* replaces *and*)

I love the music of the '90s.
(*'90s* means *1990s*)

Here's an interesting use of the apostrophe: to create a "plural" of a single letter, as in

Tommy got four D's on his report card.

However, this rule does not apply with multiple letters, as in

Brenda is going to write a song about the ABCs of love.

ELLIPSES

.....

We use the *ellipsis mark* (. . .) to alert the reader that something has been removed from the original or quoted material, that the speaker has hesitated or faltered or that there is more material than is actually cited or used:

"We must fight this closure . . . we must save this factory."
(The original statement was "We must fight this closure by a management that is bent on saving money with no regard for this town; we must save this factory." In the interest of economy and impact, the writer condensed this statement but preserved its accuracy.)

Facing the hostile audience, Baker tried to frame his thoughts. "Under these circumstances," he said, "I feel I can no longer serve this community as superintendent. I have tried my best . . . I have always wanted. . . ." Unable to continue, he left the crowded meeting.

Note from this example that a period precedes the ellipsis if it ends the sentence. Ellipses should be used sparingly in journalistic writing because they can raise reader suspicion about the importance of the missing phrase and how it affects meaning. Also, too many ellipses can bleed

energy away from the content by forcing readers to follow the breaks. Sometimes it's better to paraphrase and present the idea more succinctly, with more impact.

- **Other punctuation marks, if needed, come after the quoted material but before the ellipsis.**

“How would you feel? . . .”

“We can't stand for this! . . .”

PARENTHESES

The characteristics of journalistic writing—brevity, crispness and clarity—imply that parentheses are not welcome, but they can be effective. Two of the most common uses are to signify the addition of needed information and to mark an aside to the main thought.

Caveat emptor (“let the buyer beware”) should be every consumer's mantra.

The swimmer deflected any questions about his health. (Some reporters had noted his slight limp.)

Avoid inserting lengthy or complicated material in parentheses, as a general rule.

- **If the material inside the parentheses is not a complete sentence, put the period outside the parentheses.**

She likes decaffeinated coffee (the cold-water extract type).

- **If the parenthetical material is a complete sentence but it depends on the sentence around it for context, put the period outside the parentheses.**

He whispered, “Carpe diem” (“Seize the day”).

- **If the parenthetical material is a complete sentence and can stand alone, put the period inside the parentheses.**

The incumbent refused his opponent's invitation to a debate. (During his last campaign, everyone agreed, he was severely unprepared for impromptu questions.)

QUESTION MARK AND EXCLAMATION MARK

- If you are asking a *direct question*, you must use the question mark.

Why do you put peanut butter on your celery?

- If your question is *indirect*, no question mark is needed.

Voters want to know when the bond issue will be on the ballot.

- The exclamation mark should be used only to express surprise or a strong emotion.

In most writing you probably will employ it only in direct quotation because of the exclamation's sensational nature.

After receiving his award, the actor said, "I've never been so honored in all my life!"

However, an exclamation mark is not necessary for this kind of sentence:

The restaurateur opened his new location despite the transit strike.

- Both the exclamation mark and the question mark should be included inside quotation marks if the exclamation or question is part of the quoted material.

In direct quotations, remember that the comma is not necessary if the exclamation mark or the question mark is part of the quoted material that precedes attribution:

"You can't make me answer that!" the witness screamed.

"Is this really the kind of government we want?" the senator asked.

As you can see from this lengthy discussion (we kept it as brief as we could), punctuation is more than basic mechanics. It is your tool for grace and rhythm. It provides clarity, flow, emphasis—even drama. Use punctuation marks wisely and naturally. Properly used, they will speak to your readers.

Spelling

Don't feel bad—we don't.

So what if a 13-year-old girl can spell *chiragra*, *cucullate* and *recre-mentitious* on her way to winning the Scripps National Spelling Bee?

In truth, we would have struggled to recognize and properly spell such words, but we have to admire her understanding of language and her study habits.

However, we are more interested in your understanding that *accommodate* has two *m*'s and *accumulate* only one. We are eager for you to understand that *definitely* contains no *a* but that *separate* does.

To achieve this goal, we ask you to be curious about the language you use daily. We urge you to read with your dictionary handy. Build that vocabulary! And, we caution you not to depend on computer spell-check programs. They not only dull your focus and precision, they are also too often wrong.

We begin this chapter by acknowledging a debate that has persisted for several centuries about spelling—surfacing again in Britain recently with a “free spelling” (make that *freespeling*) movement. It reflects a concern that more than 10 percent of English words aren't spelled the way that they sound. More than 100 years ago, the famed dramatist George Bernard Shaw, who later left the bulk of his estate to a Simplified English Spelling Program, complained to the Times of London:

English spelling contains thousands of excuses for rebuking children, for beating them, for imprisoning them after school hours, for breaking their spirits with impossible tasks.

In the United States, Col. Robert McCormick’s Chicago Tribune instituted what it called “saner spelling” of a number of words in its newspaper; so from 1934 to 1975, *phantom* became *fantom*, and *although* became *altho*.

Although (note the conventional spelling) the Tribune reverted to traditional usage (announced in a 1975 editorial titled “Thru is through and so is tho”), the Simplified Spelling Society still exists and contributes regularly to the spelling dialogue (*dialog?*).

So it’s important to remember that our language is dynamic—change is always in the wind. For example, in the wake of the American Revolution, politicians and lexicographers joined forces to create some “American” spellings (*logic*, *theater*, *honor*, *defense*) so they wouldn’t be the same as the British spellings (*logick*, *theatre*, *honour*, *defence*). Change will always be with us.

What does this mean to you?

It means that you should be aware that while our language is always in some state of flux, it still will be bound by such conventions as standardized spelling. So, with due regard for history and debate, let’s get on with it: There may be more to life than a spelling bee, but you will be measured by your words—and how you spell them.

WHY WE STRUGGLE WITH CORRECT SPELLINGS

The reasons are many.

First, we don’t always “see” what we hear. For instance, poor pronunciation of the verb *separate* (sounded out properly as sep-*Ahh*-rate) could cause one to “hear” sep-*Err*-ate. In fact, *seperate* is a common misspelling. No amount of listening for good phonics can substitute for looking up the word, taking note of how the syllables are organized and what the pronunciation guides state. You *see* the word—and we hope, it takes residence in your consciousness.

Second, we don’t read enough. Surprised? Don’t be—our lives are consumed by media barrages, and the combination of television, digital audio players and the short bursts of online and cellular phone communication keeps many students from being “swallowed up” in a good book. However, when thousands of preadolescents gobble up the newest 600-page “Harry Potter” book, we know there is hope. But this

truth remains: When we don't read, not only does our recognition of correct spelling suffer—so does our vocabulary.

Third, our language is packed with word pairs (sometimes trios) that sound alike but are very different in meaning. No amount of listening will help you here (note that we didn't write *hear*). For example, note these pairings (known as homonyms or homophones):

cite sight site

principal principle

seem seam

to too two

Using the proper word requires that you understand its meaning. No spell-check program will help you in this regard. In fact, a spell-check program can contribute to embarrassing errors.

Fourth, many students seem to think that memorization and application of spelling rules are keys to spelling mastery (or at least consistency). We agree that studying and following helpful spelling guidelines are useful, but there is a more effective method of improving one's spelling: using these words in one's writing.

Yes, our language can be frustrating. We'll take that as a given—and now we'll get to work.

Let's first talk about the importance of and strategies for detecting improper spellings. Then we will focus on the three S's—Sound, Sense and Structure—stressing that all three areas are important keys to spelling improvement.

DETECTING MISSPELLINGS: LOOK, LISTEN AND LOOK AGAIN

Not all serious readers are good spellers, but for many, a steady diet of the printed word certainly helps their spelling ability. These days, we hear far more words than we see, and we have fewer opportunities to visualize words and to understand their meanings. When we don't *see* these words, our retention of them and their context suffers. For example, it helps to see the noun *environment* because the *n* in *environ* (its root) is often not properly pronounced.

The same is true for two similar-sounding adjectives: *discreet* (prudent or cautious) and *discrete* (distinct or separate). Seeing these words in the context of their proper use greatly helps a process of permanently imprinting the correct spelling:

Theirs was a discreet affair.

Her plans have three discrete parts.

Hearing these words can also give us some context for their use, but visualization (seeing the word as we hear it) is key to completing our understanding and future proper use.

Another example: Making the correct choice between *stationary* (not moving) and *stationery* (writing material) may not seem difficult, as they are quite different in meaning. Yet how often are they confused and therefore misspelled? Then there's the matter of *sweet* versus *suite*, or *desert* versus *dessert*, and *complimentary* versus *complementary*. How about something as deceptively simple as *bare* and *bear*? *Real* and *reel*? This could become a very long list! Our advice: See the word. Note the organization of its letters. Link that to its meaning and use. When you do that, you won't get confused over the spelling and word use in this sentence:

The \$50-a-day hotel suite was a sweet deal.

Listen Carefully!

Note the sounds of these two words:

pronounce: pro-nouns'

pronunciation: pro-nun-see-á-shun

By listening to yourself say these words, can you *see* the difference in their spellings? Note, for example, the "ow" in *pronounce* and the "un" in *pronunciation*, and it's likely that you won't mistakenly spell out *pronunciation*. Again, seeing these words helps to imprint them in your consciousness.

Now consider these two words: *wreck*, as a verb (pronounced "rek" with a soft *e*, meaning to destroy accidentally) and *wreak* (pronounced "reek" and meaning to inflict punishment or damage). Not understanding the proper pronunciation of a word and its meaning led to this erroneous (and embarrassing) newspaper headline:

Forest fires wreck havoc on California highways.

We hope you understand the importance of “soft” and “hard” vowels in pronunciation. For example, the noun *hat* contains a soft *a*, whereas the verb *hate* contains a hard *a*. So, failure to note the “soft” *e* in “wreck” proved costly for the headline writer. Fortunately, the study of phonics (teaching reading and spelling with the sounds of speech) is enjoying a resurgence, after some bitter wars over such controversial methods in teaching writing. Remember—the pronunciation key in the front of printed dictionaries can be very helpful. Please follow those guides as you examine individual words (and how they break down according to syllables and to pronunciation stress). And note that such guides are not regular features of online dictionaries. Let print rule!

Proofreading: That Second (and Third) Look

In our experience, many weak spellers are “skimmers,” people who halfheartedly review what they have written, and who resist carefully examining either structure or content, in the belief that their work is done. They probably do not assume that a certain percentage of the words they use could be misspelled. They tend to use a spell-check program as their one and only defense against errors and don’t understand the pitfalls of homophones. They don’t (or won’t) look up the word to check meaning and spelling.

Proofreading is a vital part of editing. It demands close attention to one’s writing—its content, meaning, structure and spelling. Although a spell-checker can be effective as an alert system, we say again: Live with your dictionary. Inhale it. Understand the look, meaning and sound of words. And read, read and read some more. You will be amazed at how your word recognition will improve.

While correcting spelling is obviously important, we hasten to add that the chief beneficiary of effective proofreading is improvement to your writing’s content and style. This is why drafts are so vital in writing. They give you second, third and, yes, fourth chances to improve your work!

STRATEGIES FOR IMPROVING SPELLING

As we indicated earlier, we believe in three keys to spelling improvement: sound, sense and structure. They provide an effective approach, which brings you closer to your language.

Sound

“Sounding” a word by breaking it into phonetic patterns can be an effective spelling guide. It’s amazing how many words you can sound out without the aid of a dictionary and come up with the right spelling. However, English is a tricky language, full of oddities that can slip you up. Look at the following words, which all have the same *-ough* ending:

through	cough	bough	dough
(throo)	(kôf)	(bow, sounding like “ow”)	(doe—with a long o)

Similar spellings, four different sounds—these reflect another one of the challenges of English spelling.

Looking up a word also reveals how many syllables it has and which syllable is accented. This provides a fine tuning of the word, and that visual review helps you match sight to sound.

Consider these two words:

desert—barren wilderness
(déz-urt)

dessert—something sweet after a meal
(di-zúrt)

Their differing pronunciations should help distinguish their differences. Naturally, exceptions always spoil the example, so in the interest of full disclosure we admit that when used as a verb *desert* (to abandon) is pronounced like the noun *dessert*. (Nothing’s perfect, right?) Still, examining syllables will also give you a keener ear for pronunciation.

A method sometimes used to help improve spelling is mnemonics (the *m* is silent), which is a device to help one’s memory or, in the case of spelling, to create a memorable association. In the case of *dessert*, we suggest a sweet treat that is so good that you want *two* helpings—leading you to remember the two *s*’s in the word.

Here are four frequently misspelled words, divided by their syllables. Note how a careful sounding of them helps you avoid a misspelling:

per-sist-ent

(No problem until you get to the *-ent* suffix for *persist*. Your dictionary pronunciation will reflect an “*eh*” rather than an “*ah*” sound for that word ending; hence the use of an *e* in the suffix. That’s a helpful key in avoiding a misspelling.)

di-lem-ma

(Not two *l*’s and one *m*. Note the punctuation stress on the second syllable, which contains one *m*. The second *m* follows in the third syllable.)

sep-a-rate

(*Sep* and *rate* are not separated by an *e*. Further, the *a* is sounded as an “ah,” not “urh,” which, as your dictionary explains, indicates an *e*.)

def-i-nite-ly

(*Def* and *nite* are not separated by an *a*. Note how the *i* is pronounced “softly,” as in *pit*. It is pronounced the same as the *di-* in *dilemma*. Also note the word *finite*—a definite, fixed measurement—within *definitely*.)

Checking pronunciation also makes you aware of silent (but not invisible) letters that can foil correct spelling. For example, the musical *chord* has a silent *h*, which makes it sound exactly like the material *cord*. The normal pronunciation of *environment* and *government* does not reveal the hidden *n*, yet in this case *govern* is an obvious root. The same goes for a hidden *r* in *surprise*, although there is no sensible root here that will assist you.

Sound may be a great help in unraveling and then putting together difficult words, but tying sound to “look” also plays a key role. Here’s a tip: When dealing with words you find difficult to spell, pronounce them aloud, write them out by syllable (as in *en-vi-ron-ment*), and you will match sound to the writing—either confirming a letter that belongs or noting one that remains “silent.” Let’s focus now on that second *s*—sense.

Sense

What is the definition of a particular word? What is its proper use in a sentence? Answering these questions often requires the use of a dictionary or some closer examination of the history and use of a word. A dividend of such a search is that you will see the correct spelling of the word. When you see certain word pairs together, perhaps you immediately understand the differences in their meanings—and spellings. But you would rarely see them together, so it helps to set up pairs (even trios) and study them with an eye toward their spelling differences.

Look at the following *homophones* (similar-sounding word groups). You probably can define the differences between many of them, but how quickly can you adjust to their different spellings? That part of seeing—and understanding—a word, especially in the context of a sentence, is critical to its proper use and spelling. It reflects not just on your general knowledge but on your precision as well. As you will note, your mastery

of the parts of speech will be important in recognizing the distinctions among these groups.

accept except	crews cruise	morning mourning	rack wrack	vain vane vein
aisle I'll isle	discreet discrete	oar ore	rye wry	ware wear
bear bare	grate great	penance pennants	seam seem	weather whether where
berry bury	heard herd	pray prey	sight site cite	
cede seed	hour our	principal principle	their there they're	
complement compliment	lead led	profit prophet	to too two	

Understanding the sense of a word helps us to both use and spell it correctly. Consider *council* and *counsel*. Similar pronunciations aside, their intended meanings in the sentence should be clear:

The city council approved the land-use application, based on advice from its legal counsel.

The attorney counseled her client to appeal the traffic fine.

These distinctions are cheerfully brought to you by your dictionary.

The subject–verb contraction *it's* and the possessive pronoun *its* are other examples in which spelling depends on knowing the sense of words. In this case good grammar requires us to know the difference between *it's* and *its*, but a knowledge of their meanings is a giant step toward avoiding errors in their selection. It's not that difficult, right?

Structure

Just as our language has rules dealing with agreement, case and punctuation, it also has rules to control spelling. It may seem as though

spelling rules are riddled with exceptions, but most words are covered by some basic guidelines. Let's examine several of the key rules and note some exceptions.

Surviving suffixes

A *suffix* is a group of letters added to the end of a root word to give it new or added meaning. For example, when you add *-ible* to *access*, you have *accessible*, which means “easy to approach.”

Sometimes, however, suffixes are tacked on to incomplete roots. Take *dispense*. If you want a suffix after it to denote “an ability to dispense,” you would add *-able*, and because the last letter of the root is a vowel, you drop it and make *dispensable*. (However, dropping the vowel doesn't always occur. A good example is *changeable*. One reason for this is that *change* has a “harder” ending pronunciation than does *dispense*.)

So why do we have *-ible* and *-able* when they mean the same thing? The answer has to do with the history of our language; *-ible* connects with Old Latin-based verbs, and *-able* has Old French and Anglo-Saxon lineage. The use of *-able* or *-ible* gives you a clue to a word's origin, and you will find that *-able* words outnumber the *-ible* ones.

The other suffixes you should master are *-ance/-ence* and *-ant/-ent*. These too come from French and Latin, and the *-a* or *-e* choice has to do only with the original form of the Latin or French word.

Both *-ance* and *-ence* create nouns from verbs, indicating a state or a quality, as in *resistance* and *persistence*. Both *-ant* and *-ent* are used to form adjectives, as in *resistant* and *persistent*.

With this background, we offer the following general rules about the uses of these suffixes.

■ **The suffix *-able* is used mostly with complete root words and is more common than *-ible*.**

Therefore, we have *workable*, *dependable* and *perishable*. There are, of course, exceptions. A few root words drop their final *e* when adding *-able*. These include *desirable*, *excusable*, *indispensable* and *usable*. Fortunately, there aren't many of these! There are many more examples of the retention of the final *e*, such as *changeable*, *manageable* and *noticeable*.

■ Only *-able* follows *g*, *i* and the hard *c* (“k” sound).

This dependable rule explains the spelling of *navigable*, *amiable* and *irrevocable*. It does require an understanding of the usable “root” form, however, as in *navig* for *navigate*.

■ The suffix *-ible* is commonly used after double consonants (such as *ll* and *rr*), and after *s*, *st*, some “d” sounds and the soft *c* (“s” sound).

This rule explains *infallible* and *horrible*, *divisible* and *plausible*, *edible* and *credible*, *forcible* and *invincible*.

■ Sorry to say, but there are no firm rules for the use of *-ance/-ence* and *-ant/-ent* suffixes.

There are some guidelines, however, to help you make some distinctions:

- **Their sounds.** For example, *attendance* has an “ah” sound in its suffix, but *independence* has an “eh” sound.
- **Your memory.** Here are some of the more difficult ones to remember:

<i>-ance/-ant</i>	<i>-ence/-ent</i>
attendance	existence
descendant	independence
maintenance	persistent
relevant	recurrent
resistant	superintendent

“ie-ei-oh!”

The *ie/ei* dilemma is not overwhelming. The following guidelines should help.

■ The *-ie* spelling is more common than *-ei*. And *i* usually precedes *e* unless it follows a *c* that carries an “s” sound.

Here are some examples:

Before or without a c	After a c
fierce	deceit
hygiene	perceive
niece	receipt
wield	receive

Note that French *-ier* words like *financier* don't violate the *-ei* after *c* rule. The *-ier* just happens to be a standard ending.

It's more demanding to master those *-ei* constructions:

- Words with long “a” sounds, such as *weigh* and *freight*
- Words with long “ain” sounds, such as *feign* and *reign*
- Five exceptions that just demand memorization: *caffeine*, *leisure*, *protein*, *seize* and *weird*

■ **If a c carries a “sh” sound, it probably will be followed by ie.**

Examples include:

ancient deficient sufficient

To double or not to double the consonant

When you add *-ing* or *-ed* to a word, you generally double a final consonant only when:

- The word ends in a single consonant: *Commit* becomes *committing* and *committed*.
- That consonant is preceded by a single vowel: *Commit* is safe here, so the final consonant can be doubled.
- The accent is on the last syllable: The pronunciation is *commit* (accented syllable underlined), so our rule is valid. (Note that the accent on *profit* is on the first syllable, so *profited* or *profiting* is correct.)

Note these other examples, where all three guidelines are met:

acquitted equipping occurring omitted

Once you understand this rule, you can see that certain words will not double their final consonant. This occurs when:

- The accent is not on the final syllable of the root word. This explains *canceled* and *traveling*. Note their accents:

cancel travel

This also explains the spelling of *profited*.

- No vowel precedes the final consonant. This explains *investing*; a consonant precedes the final *t*. Note, too, that the accent is not on the final syllable.

Take note of one other guideline:

- The suffix *-ment* doesn't require doubling the final consonant of the root word. Because *-ment* begins with a consonant, there is no need to alter the root:

equipping *but* equipment

allotting *but* allotment

committed *but* commitment

(Note that *commit* has the accent on the final syllable, unlike the previous example of *invest*. Therefore, another *t* is added to commit to join the suffix *-ed*.)

No need to be *harassed* or *embarrassed* by this list!

This next list of words is frustrating but not overwhelming. Although usually reliable rules seem to have been abandoned, sound can be a great help. Examining differences in pronunciations and meanings can assist as well.

This list is not comprehensive, but it should help you in many cases. Note that the pairs typically differ in the number of consonants, as with the two *r*'s in *embarrass* and only one in *harass*. Note, too, the sometimes subtle differences in pronunciation—that is, which syllable gets the most stress.

accumulate	inoculate	recommend
accommodate	innovative	occasional
battalion	millionaire	religious
medallion	questionnaire	sacrilegious
census	proceed	theater
consensus	precede	massacre
embarrass	supersede	
harass		vilify
		villain

SOME FINAL WORDS (TO MASTER)

Here is a list of words that are most commonly misspelled by students and professionals alike. Note that many of the guidelines and suggestions mentioned in this chapter can help you spell these words correctly.

Remember: When in doubt, look it up. And remember—the “first” or primary spelling in the dictionary entry controls—“other” or “secondary” spellings won’t work.

a lot	believe	coolly	exhilarate
acceptable	benefited	counselor	existence
accessible	bookkeeper	courageous	extremely
accidentally	broccoli	criticize	fierce
accommodate	business	curiosity	fiery
accumulate	caffeine	definite	financier
achieve	calendar	definitely	forcible
acknowledgment	canceled	desirable	fulfill
acquit	cemetery	desperate	government
admissible	changeable	deterrent	grammar
adviser	chocolate	dilemma	harassment
all ready	commitment	dumbfound	hemorrhage
allege	comparable	ecstasy	hierarchy
already	conceive	eighth	hygiene
annihilate	condemn	embarrass	incredible
argument	congratulations	endeavor	indispensable
assassin	conscious	environment	innocuous
athletic	consensus	excitable	inoculate
bankruptcy	consistent	excusable	insistence

irascible	niece	protein	supersede
irresistible	noticeable	questionnaire	supervisor
jeopardy	occasion	recede	surprise
judgment	occurrence	recommend	tariff
knowledgeable	omitted	referred	temperament
legitimate	optimistic	relevant	tomatoes
leisure	parallel	remembrance	usable
liaison	pastime	repetitious	vacillate
likable	perceive	resistant	vacuum
likelihood	permissible	rhythm	vilify
loneliness	persistent	seizure	villain
maintenance	potatoes	separate	visible
manageable	precede	sheriff	weird
millionaire	predecessor	sizable	wield
mischievous	prejudice	skillful	willful
missile	privilege	sovereign	withhold
misspell	procedure	succeed	woolly
necessary	profited	superintendent	yield

Really, there aren't that many words on this list. (Think how many thousands you have already mastered, and these words will become David to the vocabulary Goliath.) If there are words not on this list that challenge you, add them now and make notes about how to remember them.

Remember: the more you use these words—the more you write them—the easier your spelling task becomes. And don't worry: You will never have to enter a spelling bee to prove it!

Clarity, Conciseness, Coherence

Good writing doesn't just happen. Skilled writers, talented writers, professional writers—*famous writers*—don't just write. They work at it. They exert themselves. They struggle and strain. In fact, contrary to the clichéd admonition, they *do* sweat the small stuff. Because they are good at what they do, they make it look easy. But don't be fooled! Behind, or underneath, that clear, concise prose is a series of small, conscious decisions that transform the ideas inside their heads into the prose we want to read.

Veteran writers care about each word they choose, each clause they construct, each sentence they write, each paragraph they draft. They know that direct, powerful writing says *precisely* what the writer means to say—no more, no less, no ambiguity, no blurry meanings, no wasted words, no flabby prose. They know that this kind of writing is the result of many decisions mindfully made, many questions thoughtfully asked. *What am I trying to say? Is this what I mean? Is it precisely what I mean? Is this the very best way to say what I mean?*

Writers who care about the quality of their work constantly question themselves as they write, edit and revise. Then, word by word, they create clear, forceful prose. You can, too.

CHOOSING WORDS

As we gather our thoughts to begin writing, we are immediately confronted with the most fundamental choice: the individual word. The words we choose must communicate precisely what we mean with a minimum of fuss and a maximum of power. This is particularly true

with verbs, the engines of the sentence. Choosing the *correct* verb is a matter of grammar; choosing the *right* verb is a matter of conciseness and clarity. Consider the following word choice problems, remembering that every choice, no matter how minor, no matter how seemingly mechanical, affects the clarity of your prose.

Avoiding *Up*

She was selected to head up the commission.

The candidate must face up to the issues.

The storm slowed up [down] traffic all morning.

None of these verbs needs the preposition *up*. *Up* doesn't add meaning to these verbs; it takes away crispness. This may seem like a minor point, but it is at this basic level that good writing begins.

She was selected to head the commission.

The candidate must face the issues.

The storm slowed traffic all morning.

Beware of *free up* (free), *wake up* (awake), *stand up* (stand) and *shake up* (shake). In these instances *up* is more than unnecessary; it is sloppy.

Of course some verbs need *up* to complete their meaning. *Make* does not mean the same thing as *make up*. *Break* is not synonymous with *break up*. *Up* is necessary for the meaning of *pick up*. In these cases *up* is not clutter, but neither is it strong, precise writing.

The editor accused the reporter of making up sources.
(weak)

The editor accused the reporter of fabricating sources.
(stronger)

The investigation broke up the crime syndicate.
(weak)

The investigation shattered the crime syndicate.
(stronger)

The market for serious fiction is picking up.
(weak)

The market for serious fiction is improving.
(stronger)

“Verbizing” Nouns

The new boss is committed to incentivizing her employees to improve their productivity. In doing so, she is working against a disturbing trend toward marginalizing workers, which will serve to destabilize the company, fractionalize the community—and anesthetize readers of this sentence.

The suffix *-ize* is on the loose, “verbizing” and “uglyizing” our language. Some people think you can tack *-ize* onto any noun and create a verb. Most of those makeshift verbs are unnecessary. *Fractionalize*, for example, means nothing more than *split*. Other words with longer linguistic histories, such as *utilize* and *signalize*, serve no distinct purpose. *Utilize* has come to mean nothing more than *use*. *Signalize* means *signal*. Not only are many of these *-ize* words useless but they are also grating to the ear and uncomfortably bureaucratic.

Of course, yesterday’s awkward jargon is today’s respectable word. *Pasteurize* must have raised the hackles of 19th-century grammarians, but few would be upset about it today. It is difficult to say how many of the newly created, tongue-twisting *-ize* verbs will become permanent additions to our language. (The fewer the better, we hope.) While we are all awaiting the verdict, we can subject an awkward-sounding *-ize* verb to three tests:

1. Is it listed in the dictionary as an acceptable (not informal, colloquial or slang) word?
2. Does it have a unique meaning?
3. Does it have a sound that is, at the very least, not displeasing?

If the word passes the three tests, use it. If it fails, find another word. Do not “jargonize” and “awkwardize” the language. It may be all right to *pasteurize* milk, but it is not yet acceptable to *chocolatize* it.

That

That performs several grammatical functions.

- It is an adjective:

That book changed my life.

(*That* describes *book*.)

- It is a demonstrative pronoun:

That will change your life.
(*That* takes the place of a noun.)

- It is a relative pronoun:

This is a book that will change your life.
(*That* introduces a relative clause.)

- It is a conjunction:

The author said that writing the book changed her life.
(*That* links two independent clauses.)

The troublesome uses of *that* are as a conjunction and as a relative pronoun. Simply put, writers overuse the word. *That* is often unnecessary in a sentence. Its inclusion often robs the sentence of its grace and rhythm. If a word does not add meaning, get rid of it. Consider these sentences, all of which would be crisper without *that*:

The author said ~~that~~ writing the book changed her life.

The researchers admitted ~~that~~ they falsified data.

Government sources say ~~that~~ the study is flawed.

Often all you need do is remove the useless *that*; however, some sentences demand revision. Conciseness is the issue:

This is a book that will change your life.
(wordy)

This book will change your life.
(improved)

Police recovered the laptop that was stolen.
(wordy)

Police recovered the stolen laptop.
(improved)

The Web site that she designed won first prize.
(wordy)

Her Web site won first prize.
(improved)

That is sometimes used legitimately to link sentence parts. To discover whether *that* is necessary to a sentence, ask yourself two questions:

1. Can *that* be eliminated with no change in the meaning of the sentence?
2. Can the clause introduced by *that* be expressed more succinctly?

If you answer *yes* to either question, edit or rewrite.

Redundancy and Wordiness

In the world of writing, less is often more: the economical phrase, the lean sentence, the stark image. Such writing grabs readers and stays with them. On the other hand, clutter—words that serve no purpose—interferes with clear and memorable communication.

Make your words count. Ignorance of the real meanings of words, attempts at false erudition, repetition of other people’s jargon, murky thinking and sheer sloppiness can all result in prose that is wordy or redundant. Consider these examples of redundancy:

mutual cooperation

(*Cooperation* means “acting for mutual benefit.” *Mutual* is redundant.)

end result

(*Result*, by definition, is the consequence.)

very unique

(*Unique* is one of a kind. It either is or isn’t.)

incumbent officeholder

(The definition of *incumbent* is “officeholder.”)

consensus of opinion

(*Consensus* means “collective opinion.”)

repeat again

(*Repeat* includes “again” in its definition.)

refer back

(*Refer* includes “back” in its definition.)

completely destroyed

(Destruction is complete.)

A number of wordy, sluggish expressions have crept into writing. Here are some of the more common ones to avoid:

Instead of	Use
as of now	now
at the present time	now
at this point in time	now
despite the fact that	although
due to the fact that	because
on account of	because
seeing as how	because
during the course of	during

Vague Words

When we speak, thinking as we talk, sometimes searching for words or fumbling with thoughts, we often insert placeholder phrases like *a type of*, *a kind of* or *in terms of*. You might hear yourself say something like: “It was the type of thing I was kind of proud of, I mean in terms of personal accomplishments.” That’s bad enough in speech. It is worse in writing. The solution: Think before you write, then edit, edit, edit.

Years of writing term papers and hearing dense and sluggish bureaucratic language—passed along not only by dense and sluggish bureaucrats but also by journalists and, sad to say, textbook authors—have cemented in our minds such filler words as *aspect*, *element*, *factor*, *situation*, *character* and *condition*.

The aspect of the situation that will be a factor will depend on the character of the elements we must contend with.

This is what you say—or write—when you don’t know what you’re talking about. The result is not only the opposite of clear writing; it is the opposite of *any* communication. Should these words crop up in your prose, weed them out mercilessly.

Euphemisms and “Fancy Words”

The vet doesn’t tell you “we’re going to have to kill your dog.” The vet says, “We’re going to have to put Fido to sleep.” Putting an animal “to sleep” is a *euphemism*, an expression designed to be less offensive or disturbing than the word or phrase it replaces. “Restroom” is a euphemism for “bathroom,” which was itself a euphemism for “toilet.” The term

used for radiation leaked from an improperly operating nuclear power plant—a mightily disturbing event—is the lovely phrase “sunshine units.” Euphemisms like this, sometimes called “doublespeak,” can be a way of shielding the bearer of negative information from taking responsibility for the information. For example, when the Internal Revenue Service finally stopped pursuing a taxpayer who had, in fact, done nothing wrong, the agency sent this note:

The audit issue was reconsidered and determined not to have existed.

Audit issue is a euphemism for a fierce, three-year battle between the taxpayer and the agency. *Reconsidered*, in this case, means the IRS finally figured out it was wrong. Note how skillfully this eerie sentence substitutes clear expression—*we made a mistake*—with euphemism. The sentence is carefully constructed to obscure an admission of error. Note also that the sentence is in passive voice, another way of masking responsibility.

Euphemisms are all around us. A company, deeply in debt, might announce to its stockholders that it is “currently experiencing a budgetary shortfall.” Another, found guilty of dumping toxic waste in a river, might admit that its “environmental compliance statistics showed a downturn.” The military wins the dubious prize for creating both the most and the most chilling euphemisms. *Entry into a nonpermissive environment* is the military’s way of evading the word *invasion*. *Friendly fire* softens the terrible tragedy of the action it describes: gunfire against troops by their own troops. *Collateral damage* is a euphemism for killing civilians.

Let’s say it’s snowing outside with a wind chill factor of 10 below zero, and you look out the window and see a man running down the street clad only in boxers. What would you most likely say? What would clearly, precisely and directly express the moment? “Look at that guy! He must be nuts!” A master of euphemism would see the same thing and quietly comment that the man was “somewhat inappropriately attired given the climatic conditions.” Writers can’t stop others from manufacturing euphemisms, but they can refuse to transmit them.

A related clarity problem is “fancy words.” We don’t mean three-dollar words like *prestidigitation* or *ovolactovegetarianism*. We mean silly, inflated words that take the place of good, plain, ordinary, serviceable words: *facility* for *building*, *infrastructure* for *roads and bridges*, *domicile* for *home*. Stay clear of these pretensions. If others use them, your responsibility as a public communicator is to *not* pass them on.

Jargon

Poker players talk about a “bellybuster”—an inside straight draw. Computer geeks refer to problems caused by the incompetence of users as “PEBKACs,” which stands for Problem Exists Between Keyboard And Chair. Cops say “the perp is exiting the vehicle” instead of “the criminal is getting out of the car.” This is jargon, the specialized language of a group of people engaged in an activity, trade or occupation.

Jargon is shorthand communication, a kind of code. It works well within the group because everyone knows and understands it. But jargon is often confusing to others. A secret language, it can act to insulate the group and exclude nonmembers from the conversation. Because media writers have a responsibility to communicate clearly and simply to wider audiences, we should be jargon slayers, not jargon purveyors.

Here is a scientist deep in the throes of jargon:

Despite rigid reexamination of all experimental variables, this protocol continued to produce data at variance with our subsequently proven hypothesis.

(Translation: The experiment didn't work.)

Jargon can be used to obscure ideas or make ordinary ideas sound more important. It can also be used to hide meaning or desensitize people to issues. For a writer to perpetuate such jargon signals a failure to communicate. Using jargon does not make you sound impressive. On the contrary, you impress (and help) your audience by lucidly explaining difficult material, not repeating words and phrases you do not understand.

PUTTING WORDS TOGETHER

Clear, concise, coherent writing depends on more than careful word choice. Proper placement of words is imperative. Placement mistakes can easily harm the clarity of your prose.

Misplaced Words

In a sentence, a modifier needs to point directly and clearly to what it modifies. This means placing the modifier next to or as close as possible to what it is modifying. Adverbs like *only*, *nearly*, *almost*, *just*, *scarcely*, *even*, *hardly* and *merely* create the biggest potential difficulty

because their placement can drastically change the meaning of the sentence. Note how placement changes meaning in the following examples:

Only he can help you.
(No one else can help you.)

He can only help you.
(He can't do anything more than help you.)

He can help only you.
(He can't help anyone else.)

Notice how the placement of *almost* in the next two sentences changes the meaning:

Negotiations almost broke down on every clause in the contract.
(Negotiations did not quite break down.)

Negotiations broke down on almost every clause in the contract.
(Just about every clause caused problems during negotiations.)

When we speak we often have a devil-may-care attitude toward the placement of adverbs. But, because placement most surely changes meaning, stick to the old rule: Place the adverb (or other word) next to or as close as possible to the word you intend it to modify.

Misplaced Phrases and Clauses

Like individual words, phrases and clauses should be placed next to or near what they modify. Again, placement affects meaning, as these examples illustrate:

Hundreds of homes were devastated by tornadoes across the Midwest.

Hundreds of homes across the Midwest were devastated by tornadoes.

Note how the phrase *across the Midwest* in the first sentence modifies *tornadoes*. The meaning here is that the entire Midwest region experienced tornadoes. In the second sentence, we do not know how large an area was affected by the storms. We do know that Midwestern homes were devastated.

The plan that the student council is debating will alter the university's free speech policy.

The plan will alter the university's free speech policy that the student council is debating.

In the first sentence, the plan is being debated. In the second example, the policy is being debated.

Dangling Modifiers

A modifier “dangles” when what it is supposed to modify is not part of the sentence. For example:

To learn the craft of writing, discipline is needed.

The phrase *to learn the craft of writing* does not modify anything in the sentence. The only word it could modify is *discipline*, but that makes no sense. The sentence needs to be revised:

To learn the craft of writing, you must be disciplined.

Now the phrase correctly modifies *you*. Not only that, the revised sentence is in the active voice. The dangling-modifier sentence was in the passive voice. Here is another dangling modifier:

After traveling for more than three years, home looked good to him.

Clearly, *home* did not do the traveling; *he* did. Coherence is at stake here. The sentence needs to be rewritten so the introductory phrase clearly modifies the correct word:

After traveling for more than three years, he was happy to be home.

Split Constructions

Just as modifiers need to rest closely to what they modify, so other parts of the sentence must be placed carefully to maintain clarity and coherence of thought.

Split verbs often lead to incoherence. In most cases it is best to keep auxiliary verbs next to the main verb and to avoid splitting infinitives. Consider what happens to sentence unity and graceful expression when you separate auxiliary verbs from the main verb:

Refugees have been for more than three months living in temporary camps near the border.
(auxiliary and main verb split)

For more than three months, refugees have been living in temporary camps near the border.
(improved)

The more words you place between the verb parts, the less coherent the sentence becomes. Occasionally, however, it is acceptable—even preferable—to split a multipart verb. Almost always the verb is split by a single word, an adverb:

Junk food has always been an issue in the school cafeteria.

Placing *always* between the verb parts does not hinder coherence. In fact, it adds emphasis.

Infinitives (*to* forms of the verb) should also, in most cases, remain intact. Split infinitives contribute to awkwardness and interfere with coherent expression. A sentence should read smoothly and make sense:

The school board promised to as soon as possible review the junk food problem.
(split infinitive)

The school board promised to review the junk food problem as soon as possible.
(improved)

To aid sentence clarity and help readers or listeners understand quickly what you are trying to say, keep the subject and the verb as close as possible. Look what happens to coherence when subject and verb are interrupted by lengthy explanatory material:

The board, following months of public debate that resulted in the
(subject)
canceling of all vending machine contracts, grappled with the junk
(verb)
food problem.

The sentence forces readers or listeners to wade through 15 words between the subject (*board*) and its verb (*grappled*). But readers may have neither the time nor the inclination to slog through such constructions, and listeners can easily lose the thread of meaning. Be kind to your audience. Keep subject and verb close:

Following months of public debate that resulted in the canceling of all vending machine contracts, the board grappled with the junk food problem.

Consider one more common splitting problem: a verb and its complements. The simplest construction to understand is subject-verb-object. It answers the basic question *Who did what to whom?* Just as splitting the subject (*who*) from the verb (*did what*) interferes with clarity and coherence, so too does splitting the verb (*did what*) from its complement (*to whom*). Keep the verb and its complements (object, adverb, descriptive phrase) as close together as possible. You will promote sentence unity, readability and coherence. Consider this example:

Consumer advocates protested yesterday morning in front of three
(verb)
local toy stores what they say is the marketing of violence to
(complement)
children through the sale of toy guns.

This sentence is clumsy. To avoid losing coherent thought—and your audience—rewrite:

Consumer advocates protested today what they say is the marketing of violence to children through the sale of toy guns. Marching [picketing, assembling, gathering] in front of three local toy stores, they . . .

MAKING SENSE

Every good grammatical decision you make contributes to clarity, conciseness and coherence. Choosing strong, precise words is the first step. Placing these words correctly is the next. Focusing on the architecture of sentences is the third level.

Parallel Structure

When you place like ideas in like grammatical patterns, you create *parallel structure*. As we discussed in Chapter 6, parallel structure aligns related ideas and presents them through the repetition of grammatical structure. It is vital to both clarity and unity, and it helps create rhythm and grace in a sentence. To create parallel structure using single words, you use a series of words that are the same part of speech. For example:

This recent erosion of our civil liberties is unwarranted, unfair and indefensible.

The related ideas are the criticisms of the erosion of civil liberties. The grammatical pattern is the repetition of single adjectives.

To create parallel structure using phrases or clauses, replicate the grammatical pattern:

Meditating can clear your mind, relax your body and lift your spirits.

(repeating phrases)

Because we have the resources, because we know what's right and because we have no other choice, we should rid our air and water of toxic chemicals.

(repeating clauses)

Parallel structure binds ideas and enhances the audience's understanding of each idea by creating a lucid, easily recognizable pattern. If you begin a sentence by establishing a particular grammatical pattern and then break it, you create confusion and disharmony.

Parallel structure is commonly used to introduce complementary, contrasting or sequential ideas. The relationship between the ideas can be implicit (as in the examples offered thus far) or it can be made apparent by using signal words:

- Complementary relationship: *both/and, not only/but also*
- Contrasting relationship: *either/or, neither/nor*
- Sequential relationship: *first/second/third*

Both the construction of bike lanes and the rerouting of delivery trucks should ease traffic in the university district.

(complementary relationship, parallel structure)

Either we enforce the clean air standards or we all buy gas masks.

(contrasting relationship, parallel structure)

First, define the problem; second, gather the information; third, brainstorm the alternatives.

(sequential relationship, parallel structure)

Whether you make the relationship explicit by using signal words or implicit by letting the ideas speak for themselves, parallel structure is vital to clarity and coherence.

Sentence Fragments

As you remember from Chapter 5, a *fragment* is a group of words that lacks a subject, a predicate, a complete thought or any combination of the three. Grammatically, a fragment cannot stand alone. When readers see a group of words beginning with a capital letter and ending with a period, they expect a complete sentence. If instead you offer them a fragment, you confuse them. Unintentional fragments hinder both coherence and clarity.

Bloggers are revolutionizing international reporting. Although there are credibility issues. Network correspondents are using blogs as sources.

This fragment (underlined) is confusing. Maybe the writer meant:

Although there are credibility issues, bloggers are revolutionizing international reporting.

But it may be that the writer meant:

Although there are credibility issues, network correspondents are using blogs as sources.

Fragments leave your audience hanging, forcing them to guess your intended meaning. Offer clear, complete thoughts. Fragments used knowingly, sparingly and stylistically are another story. See Chapter 11 for a more in-depth discussion.

Run-On Sentences

A *run-on sentence* is composed of two, three or any number of whole, complete sentences joined together ungrammatically. Chapter 5 discussed the run-on as a grammatical problem. Here we want to emphasize it as an obstacle to concise and coherent writing.

The two most common run-on sentences are those inappropriately linked with *and* and those incorrectly spliced with commas. Both can confuse and frustrate a reader:

The public schools must deal with a shrinking budget and class sizes will increase.
(run-on)

When you use *and* to link two independent clauses as above, you are saying that the two thoughts reinforce or directly complement each other

or follow one another sequentially. If this isn't the case, as in the preceding example, you have created not just a run-on but also an incoherent sentence. If the thoughts in the clauses are not related in a definable, explicit way, rewrite the run-on as two separate sentences. If the thoughts are related, use a connecting word to signal the correct relationship:

Because the public schools must deal with a shrinking budget,
class sizes will increase.
(improved)

Note that the run-on was corrected by subordinating one thought (clause) to another to clarify and make explicit the relationship between the two clauses.

When commas link clauses, readers expect the words following a comma to add to or complement what they have just read. If the clauses are not related in this way, the result is an incoherent run-on:

The legislature mandated cutbacks throughout the public school system, class sizes increased dramatically, elective classes decreased significantly.

This run-on sentence needs to be rewritten with the relationship between the clauses clearly expressed. Commas are the wrong signal here. In the absence of correct signals, it is unclear exactly what relationship exists. Here's a rewrite:

Soon after the legislature mandated cutbacks throughout the public school system, class size increased dramatically and elective classes decreased significantly.

Now the relationship between the three thoughts is clear.

CLARITY, CONCISENESS, COHERENCE

Writers write to be understood. Whether they are writing to inform, amuse, uplift, persuade or cajole, their thoughts must be clear; their sentences must be comprehensible. Clarity, conciseness and coherence begin with individual word choice. From that point every grammatical decision either enhances or detracts from this triple goal. Imprecision, clutter, misplaced phrases and murky construction have no place in good writing. The goal is lean, powerful communication. You can reach it with practice, patience, hard work and a firm grasp of grammar.

Style

Frozen food, the history of bookshelves, the semicolon, Tupperware—these are not exciting subjects. These are not subjects that lend themselves to page-turning prose. You are probably not dying to read about these subjects. In fact, you can't imagine what could possibly compel you to read—and actually enjoy—a story about frozen food or an article on the origin of bookshelves. It's not that great a challenge to write a story others will want to read when the subject is inherently dramatic—a mine disaster, the birth of quintuplets—or has immediate relevance to their lives, like an approaching hurricane. But what about the stories people read or attend to not because they were already interested but because the writer *made* them interested?

How does a writer do that? How does a writer make a piece on Tupperware a must-read? The key is learning to go beyond correctness, clarity and competence to something more: stylish, graceful, compelling writing. This is not an easy task. It is, after all, a writer's life work, the evolution of craft. Style doesn't just happen. It is carefully, thoughtfully, imaginatively and patiently learned.

WHAT IS STYLE?

Style is the writer's unique vision—and the lively, original expression of that vision—that draws audience attention to the message. It is the reflection of the writer's way of seeing, thinking and using language. Style begins at the beginning—with the kind of story a writer decides

to pursue and how the writer thinks about or conceptualizes that story. Style has much to do with the depth, breadth, originality and quirkiness of the writer's research. And of course, style is evident in the writing. Style is the product of purposeful choices, the culmination of many small things done well, the result of sheer hard work. Style has an important place in *all* writing.

Novice writers, and many experienced ones as well, harbor several dangerous misconceptions about style:

- They believe if they write clean, clutterless prose, their writing will lack style.
- They believe style is like a garnish or a spicy condiment added to bring zest to bland writing.
- They believe style has something to do with ornamentation or flashiness.
- They fear that style, because it is hard to define (“I don’t know what it is, but I know it when I see it”), is therefore mysterious and unattainable.

They are wrong.

As any sophisticated writer will tell you, style emerges from—and cannot exist without—crisp, clean, language use. First come the fundamentals: strong verbs, grammatical consistency, tightly constructed sentences. Then comes style. Novelist John Updike looks at style by comparing the process of writing to the process of becoming a musician. Musicians begin by learning to identify and play individual notes. They learn how to read music. They practice scales. They play simple compositions. Only after mastering these fundamentals can they begin to develop their own manner of musical expression, their own style. Writers too must master the basics before they can find their own voice.

Style, then, has little to do with ostentatious language. Window dressing (a gaggle of adjectives, for example), verbal ornamentation (big words or purple prose) and fancy tricks do not generally contribute to compelling writing. In fact, verbal flashiness can obscure coherent thought. There is nothing flashy, but everything compelling, about these first two paragraphs of a Wall Street Journal story written by Carrie Dolan:

Out on an open range, a 1,300-pound bull with ropes looped around his middle stands drooling in the dust. He is stubbornly

resisting efforts to load him into a stock trailer so he can be taken to the corral for medical treatment.

Jane Glennie gets out of her truck. She spits into her hand and grinds a glowing cigarette butt into her palm. While two mounted cowboys hold the ropes tight, she plants her boot on the bull's horn and shoves. The beast just jerks his head, drools and digs his hoofs deeper into the dirt. Mrs. Glennie grabs a shovel. A couple of hefty whacks later, the bull plods into a livestock trailer.

This is crisp, lean writing: simple sentences, strong verbs, powerful images. This is style.

The final misconception, that style is mysterious and unattainable, is the hardest to discount. Because it is unique to the individual writer, style does seem to defy definition. But that doesn't mean it's mysterious. It means it's personal, idiosyncratic and distinctive. Far from being enigmatic, style is the sum of a series of good, solid decisions—many of them as basic as word choice or sentence construction—that a writer is aware enough, smart enough and experienced enough to make time after time.

Style begins with accuracy and correctness and moves on to lively, original use of the language. It is always appropriate to the subject, the audience and the medium. Ultimately, it is the difference between a competent story and a memorable one.

Let's demystify style by examining some of its key components: liveliness, originality, rhythm and sound, and imagery.

LIVELINESS

.....

Lively writing is not excitable, overwrought, exclamation-mark-studded prose, but rather clutterless composition that moves along at a good clip, involving readers or listeners and carrying them briskly from paragraph to paragraph. Like all components of style, liveliness depends not only on the way you use the language but also on what you have to say.

Style and substance go hand in hand. Your skills as an observer, interviewer and information gatherer net the raw material. Your skill as a writer transforms that material into vibrant prose. Here's how to make your writing lively.

Choose Verbs Carefully

Strong, precise verbs give energy to a sentence; weak, vague or over-modified verbs sap a sentence of its power. Instead of tacking on adverbs to clarify the meaning of a verb, spend time searching for the one right word.

Instead of

talk incessantly
look into deeply
walk slowly
eat quickly

Use

jabber, chatter, blab
delve, probe, plumb
amble, trudge, saunter
gobble, wolf

Consider the abundance of simple, colorful verbs in this introduction to an article on our obsession with hair. Note rhythm and rhyme as you read.

We twirl, curl, cut and pluck it. We shave, brush, tint and wax it.
We wash, braid and pomade it. We spend more than \$2 billion a year pampering it and have more of it per square inch than a chimpanzee.

Use Intensifiers Sparingly

The adverbs *very*, *really*, *truly*, *completely*, *extremely*, *positively*, *absolutely*, *awfully* and *so* often add nothing but clutter. They show sloppiness of thought and generally add a too-colloquial tone to writing. Instead of intensifying a weak word, search for a strong, precise one.

Instead of

very angry
extremely thirsty
really happy
awfully hot

Use

irate
parched
elated
scorching

When you've found a strong word, leave it alone. Don't rob it of its impact by unnecessarily intensifying it:

~~really~~ famished

~~extremely~~ sweltering

~~truly~~ extravagant

Avoid Redundancies

Understand the meanings of words before you use them. *More equal, more parallel* and *most unique* are redundant expressions you can easily avoid if you pay attention to the meanings of *equal, parallel* and *unique*.

Edit to Remove Wordiness

Nothing destroys the vitality of prose faster, or as completely, as does verbosity, clutter, “purple prose” or bureaucratese. Each word, each phrase, each clause, each sentence should survive your rigorous editing process because it adds meaning, substance or color to the piece. Making every word count is the challenge. Review “Redundancy and Wordiness,” “Vague Words,” “Euphemisms and ‘Fancy Words’” and “Jargon” in Chapter 10.

Use Active Voice

As you know from Chapter 5, active voice contributes to sharp, clear, vigorous sentence construction. In an active-voice sentence, the actor performs the action. In a passive-voice sentence, the actor has the action performed upon it. Passive-voice construction almost always weakens the verb and adds unnecessary words. It often sounds stilted and formal.

Use Present Tense

Present tense often allows the reader or listener to experience the story as it unfolds. When you use present tense as an element of style, you create a scene with urgency and immediacy. Consider this account, written in present tense, from a longer piece about a women’s basketball team:

Down near the basket, Karen is guarding Courtney, a five-foot-two freshman walk-on. Courtney has the ball. Karen is trying hard to get into the rhythm of this fast-paced drill. Courtney is little and quick, but Karen is quick too. Or she used to be. Okay, she thinks to herself, let’s do it. Let’s move.

She lunges at Courtney, looking to steal the ball. At the same time, Courtney moves toward Karen. Karen’s right hand connects with Courtney’s shoulder. The fingers jam back. Karen hears a pop. For a moment, the sound makes her so nauseous that she doesn’t feel the pain. Then she feels the pain. She freezes in place, feet planted on the floor, white-faced, disoriented. She grabs her hand. It is her shooting hand.

Of course, the scene took place in the past. The writer is recounting it for the audience much later. But the present tense makes us feel as if we are there watching. The scene is alive. Not all stories can or should be told in present tense. Often past or future tenses are essential for historical accuracy. But the technique of narrowing the gap between audience and story by using present tense has many applications. Scene setting is certainly one of them.

Another is *attribution*. Using present tense to attribute quotations or present dialogue in a story—*says* instead of *said*, for example—shows the immediacy of the comments, quickens the pace of the story and, in the case of conversational debate or opposing comments, shows the ongoing nature of the controversy. If a person said something yesterday, he or she would be likely to say the same thing today (unless, of course, we're talking about politicians).

No single element ensures lively writing. But if you use strong, precise language; rid your prose of clutter; stick with the active voice; and use, where appropriate, the present tense, your writing will be crisper, snappier and more inviting.

ORIGINALITY

Originality of style cannot be separated from originality of substance. If, as a thinker, observer, interviewer and cultural forager, you gather fresh material and come to novel insights, the written work you produce can be distinctive and original. When magazine writer Mary Roach visited Florida to write about, of all things, Tupperware, she began her story this way:

The Tupperware World Headquarters in Orlando, Florida, is a collection of long, low modular buildings, the sort of shapes you could easily stack one on top of another for just-right storage in your pantry, fridge or freezer, if that's the sort of person you were.

The playful tone and the unique visual image create an unusually enticing first sentence. This is what originality is all about: a novel vision translated into simple but imaginative language. This is style.

Or consider this wonderful sentence in the middle of a National Public Radio story about the emergency room of an animal hospital:

In the examination room to the right of Dr. Cabe, a rust-colored dog is lying very still on the mirror steel table, its four legs splaying

out at odd angles over the counter, as the couple who owns him hold one another, their faces colorless and almost round from crying.

The writing here is spare; the description precise, controlled and original. The writer could have described the faces of the dog owners as “pale and swollen from crying.” But this is a familiar image, too familiar to touch the reader deeply. Faces “colorless and almost round from crying”—that’s fresh and poignant.

Avoid Clichés

A *cliché*, by definition, lacks originality. It is a trite or overused expression or idea. It’s the image or the phrase that springs immediately to mind. We’ve heard it before; we’ve read it before. We know it *like the back of our hand*. It’s as *comfortable as an old shoe*. Get it? A cliché is someone else’s idea, and the more it is used, the less power it has. As poet and author Donald Hall writes, “When we put words together . . . we begin to show our original selves, or we show a dull copy of someone else’s original.” Note the following cliché-ridden remark from an economist offering the year’s forecast. Unfortunately for the economist, the remark was quoted extensively in the national media!

Let’s remember we climbed up the hill pretty darned quickly. We’ve had the rug pulled out from under us, but we’ve picked ourselves up, and maybe we can see the light at the end of the tunnel.

If the *light at the end of the tunnel* serves only to illuminate a cliché, it’s not worth the trip, is it? The challenge is to use your imaginative and linguistic powers to create original expressions.

Because we can’t resist—in truth we’ve been waiting to use the following sentence for more than a year—here’s a (to use a cliché) *shining example* of a (ludicrously inappropriate) cliché.

Just as a beautiful face has been said to launch a thousand ships, a delicious, high-quality ham can launch a multitude of convenient, great-tasting meals.

The “face that launched a thousand ships” cliché would be bad enough. But likening Helen of Troy to pork butt—that is beyond belief. We promise we didn’t make this up. The sentence actually began a story (enticingly entitled “Take Ham to New Heights”) in an honest-to-goodness magazine.

On the other hand, you can play with clichés, make them work for you by tweaking them just enough, as in this lead sentence:

In New York’s tabloid newspaper war, revenge is a dish best served boldface.

The writer knows the cliché (“revenge is a dish best served cold”), but rather than shy away from it, he messes with it just enough to be clever.

Play with Figures of Speech

Consider this clever and appropriate simile in a New York Times story about home makeover shows on TV:

Since “Trading Spaces” had its premiere on TLC . . . copycats and variations on the idea have been multiplying like wire hangers in a walk-in closet.

Or how about this metaphor in the middle of a quirky feature about a man who collects antique toasters and opened a toaster museum:

Ten years ago, Norcross’ toaster obsession was unshaped dough on the breadboard of his life.

These writers are having fun. What grabs us when we read these two sentences, what makes us smile, is the unique vision, the odd or wonderfully apt comparisons. *Similes* are verbal comparisons that use *like* or *as* to announce themselves. Original similes have power, impact, even humor. Run-of-the-mill comparisons or clichés contribute nothing: *as black as night*, *as cool as a cucumber*, *hair like spun gold*. These comparisons lack verve and originality. Where is the imaginative stretch in *as black as night*? *Night is black*. What’s the interesting comparison here? There is none.

Whereas similes are explicit comparisons using *like* or *as*, *metaphors* express a more direct comparison. Instead of stating that item A is *like* item B (a simile), a metaphor states that item A *is* item B. In the example above, the toaster collector’s obsession was not *like* unshaped dough, it *was* unshaped dough.

When you attribute human characteristics, feelings or behaviors to nonhuman or inanimate objects, you are using a device called *personification*. As you walk down the aisle of your food market, a package of double chocolate chunk cookies “beckons” to you. Cookies, of course, don’t beckon. You’ve attributed a human quality to a bakery item.

You've personified the package of cookies. Below, author Susan Orlean has fun introducing Biff, who is a boxer (of the canine persuasion), in a New Yorker feature article:

Biff is perfect. He's friendly, good-looking, rich, famous and in excellent physical condition. He almost never drools. He's not afraid of commitment. He wants children—actually, he already has children and wants a lot more. He works hard and is the consummate professional, but he also knows how to have fun.

If you are thinking to yourself, “Figures of speech are fine for poets and novelists, but I'm a *journalist*,” think again. As the examples in this section show, media writers can and do use literary devices as part of original, stylish writing. As information consumers become increasingly inundated with media messages, it becomes even more important to craft your message—be it a news story or advertising copy—in original and memorable ways, like using similes, metaphors and personification.

Play with Words

As the game began, the normally unflappable Shonely was flapped.

For millions of vegetarians, *beef* is a four-letter word.

These sentences, taken from news and magazine stories, show original language use. In the first, the word *unflappable* is turned on its head and transformed into a nonsense verb everyone can nonetheless understand. In the second, the cleverness turns on the accepted meaning of *four-letter word* as a curse word. These plays on words are simple, straightforward, appropriate to the subject—and fun.

Word play need not be complicated or devastatingly witty to be effective. It need only be original, memorable and, of course, appropriate to the tone of the message.

RHYTHM AND SOUND

Words march to a beat. Long sentences move gently, liltingly, picking up momentum as they flow. Short sentences create a staccato beat. Repetition of words or phrases can add accent and meter. Sentence

construction communicates. Words may have power, but words set in rhythmic sentences have clout. Let's examine six components of rhythmic sentence construction: repetition, parallelism, sentence length, fragments and run-ons, and the sounds of words.

Use Repetition

Purposeful repetition of words or phrases can add rhythm and grace to sentences. But, like all stylistic devices, it should be used sparingly. Too much repetition leads to boredom and clunkiness.

In the following magazine story, note the repetition of *I don't mean*:

I love the rain. I don't mean I grudgingly appreciate its ecological necessity. I don't mean I've learned to tolerate it. I don't mean I wait it out, flipping through the calendar to see how many more pages until the sun might break through. I mean I love it.

Repetition performs three stylistic functions here: It quickens the pace of the story by establishing a rhythm that pulls the reader from sentence to sentence; it creates smooth transitions; it sets up a mystery (What *does* the author mean?) that presumably the reader will want to read more about.

In tapping out a meter, repetition creates emphasis. The word or phrase you repeat assumes prominence and becomes a focal point. In the following passage, repetition of the word *gray* makes the point rhythmically and emphatically. Note too how the purposeful absence of commas in the second sentence helps the meter:

At 5:30 on a December morning in Oregon you have to dig deep just to make it out of bed. About the best you can hope for this time of year is a slate gray dawn that lightens to a dove gray morning that slips into a pearl gray afternoon.

Repetition can be a powerful, dramatic and compelling technique. Perhaps that's why it is a favorite of speechwriters who want to add force to the spoken word. Some of the public speeches most remembered and most quoted depend on the element of repetition: Winston Churchill's compelling "We shall fight on the beaches . . ." World War II speech, which used the "We shall fight" litany to pound out both a rhythm and a message, or John F. Kennedy's "Let them come to Berlin" speech that repeated this sentence with increasing force.

Create Power with Parallelism

Parallelism is actually a kind of repetition, the repetition of grammatical patterns used to convey parallel or similar ideas. Parallelism is thus simultaneously a component of agreement (Chapter 6), coherence (Chapter 10) and style. Parallelism has the potential to create rhythm, emphasis and drama as it clearly presents ideas or action. Consider this long, graceful (and witty) sentence that begins a magazine article on sneakers:

(A long time ago—before sneaker companies had the marketing clout to spend millions of dollars sponsoring telecasts of the Super Bowl; before street gangs identified themselves by the color of their Adidas; before North Carolina State’s basketball players found they could raise a little extra cash by selling the freebie Nikes off their feet; and before a sneaker’s very sole had been gelatinized, Energairied, Hexalited, torsioned and injected with pressurized gas—sneakers were, well, sneakers.)

First note the obvious parallelism of four clauses beginning with the word *before* and proceeding with similar grammatical patterns. Then note the parallel list of sneaker attributes: *gelatinized*, *Energairied* and so on. This is writing with pizzazz. It moves. It almost makes you interested in sneakers! Of course you noticed the nice bit of word play—the sneaker’s very *sole*.

Vary Sentence Length

Short sentences are naturally punchy, emphatic and dramatic; long sentences are naturally lilting, rolling and restful. Sentence length communicates just as surely as do the words within the sentence. Consider these four short, blunt sentences from a Los Angeles Times magazine story about Alzheimer’s disease:

This is what Alzheimer’s does: It fractures life. It erases the past. It scours the body of its remembered self.

The power of both words and sentence length makes this compelling. On the other hand, consider this 52-word sentence about the creative work of an advertising copywriter who is the subject of an Esquire profile:

He did some memorable commercials in the “McDonald’s and You” series, including one marathon spot to launch the campaign, which ran on for as long as a travelogue and had grandparents and riverboats and airplanes and little kids in it, and made you proud, as well as hungry, to be an American.

Note how the sentence construction mirrors the idea the writer is communicating: the marathon length of the McDonald's commercial with its overabundance of kitsch images. The sentence is playful and seemingly endless (much like a commercial). It has rhythm. You can almost dance to it.

Take care with sentence length. If you construct a series of sentences of similar lengths, you run the risk of creating a plodding, deadening rhythm. If the sentences are all short, your prose may sound truncated and choppy, like a page from a children's book: "See the ball. The ball is green. Throw the ball." If the sentences are all long, the audience's attention may wander. Varying sentence length helps maintain interest while giving you the opportunity to use rhythm for drama and emphasis. For example, consider this passage from a profile of the author's mother. Note the length of the first three sentences followed by the long, almost rambling fourth.

She taught herself to be a gourmet cook. She learned boeuf bourguignon and coq au vin from Julia Child. She perfected scampi. She created a garlic-studded pork loin I still dream about and occasionally spent all day pounding veal into paper-thin scaloppini that she wrapped around chopped prosciutto into individual rolls sewn closed with needle and thread before being braised in Marsala.

The long sentence at the end changes the rhythm of the passage. It also communicates: The sentence goes on and on, mirroring the day-long production of the entrée.

Here's another example of using sentence length to communicate. Note the relatively long sentences followed unexpectedly by a short clipped sentence at the end.

Duane Coop is standing 20 feet away from his practice target—a three-foot-diameter log with a painted red bull's-eye—throwing a two-and-a-half-pound, 32-inch double-bladed ax. The ax makes long, slow, end-over-end revolutions as it sails toward the target. Sprawled under the target, the family cat suns himself, listening without interest to the crack the six-inch blade makes as it slices into the log. The cat figures Duane won't miss. The cat's right.

Consider Fragments and Run-Ons

A fragment (an unfinished piece of a sentence) and a run-on (two or more complete sentences spliced together incorrectly) are grammatical errors. But certain grammatical rules can be bent by knowledgeable

writers who are striving to achieve special effects. The rules against fragments and run-ons can occasionally be broken when you have a specific purpose in mind, when your audience (and editor) will stand for it and when the material warrants it. Advertising copywriters seem to be particularly fragment-happy. They can overdo it, creating choppy, confusing messages. On the other hand, they can use fragments effectively, as in this Toyota ad:

All science. No fiction.

Or this Hyundai ad:

It gives. You take. What a beautiful relationship.

The first two sentences are simple, grammatical subject–verb sentences. *What a beautiful relationship* is a fragment. It’s punchy, funny and appropriate to the subject and medium. It works.

Fragments can create excitement, set a quick pace and grab attention. Like short sentences—but even more so—they have a brisk, staccato beat. They can be dramatic and emphatic. Here’s an excerpt from a version of Chapter 1 of this book, published as a column in the online magazine *Etude* (<http://etude.uoregon.edu>):

What does grammar have to do with text messaging?

Nothing.

And therefore, everything.

These fragments are used purposefully to grab the reader’s attention and to create a bit of drama.

Unlike the staccato beat of fragments, run-ons can communicate a breathless, sing-song rhythm. Depending on the words and ideas, a run-on can quicken the pace with a giddy rush of words or slacken the pace with a languid, rolling motion. Consider this run-on sentence from a Washington Post story about a Marine drill sergeant:

He is seething, he is rabid, he is wound up as tight as a golf ball with more adrenaline surging through his hypothalamus than cornered slum rat, he is everything that these Marine recruits with their heads shaved to dirty nubs have ever feared or even hoped a drill instructor might be.

That sentence rushes forth, as full of adrenaline as the drill sergeant.

Do remember that breaking grammatical rules is serious business, and that there’s an important distinction between breaking a rule purposefully

and breaking a rule because you don't know the rule. Before you use fragments or run-ons, ask yourself these questions:

- Is the device appropriate to both the subject I am writing about and the medium I am writing for?
- Is this device the best way to achieve the effect for which I am striving?
- Does it work?

Don't use fragments or run-ons unless you can answer yes to all three questions. Even then use these techniques sparingly. Like all stylistic devices, they lose both meaning and impact when overused.

Listen to the Sounds of Words

"A sentence is not interesting merely in conveying a meaning of words; it must do something more," wrote poet Robert Frost. "It must convey a meaning by sound." Broadcast journalists and speechwriters learn to write for the ear, but print writers often pay little attention to the sounds of the words they choose. That's unfortunate because most readers *hear* the printed word in their minds as they read. Print writers should be writing for the "inner ear" of their readers. Words chosen and arranged for their sound, as well as their meaning, add style and verve to prose.

Our language is full of words that sound like what they mean. Onomatopoeic words like *crack*, *buzz*, *snap*, *bang* and *chirp* imitate the sounds they define. They are crisp, colorful and doubly descriptive. Note how the "liveliness quotient" increases when you choose a word for its sound:

Instead of	Use
complain	grumble, squawk, growl
fracture	smash, shatter, snap
talk (a lot)	jabber, yammer, chatter

Some words are not actually onomatopoeic, but their sounds add to their meaning. Words beginning with the "s" sound, for example, often communicate (by sound and meaning) a kind of unpleasantness: *sneer*, *smirk* and *snigger* are stronger, nastier words than *mock*, *deride* or *look askance*. *Entanglements* can be *complications*, *problems* or *puzzles*, or

they can be *snarls* or *snags*. A dog can *dribble* or *drool*, or it can (even more unpleasantly) *slobber* or *slaver*. The meanings are the same; sound adds the extra dimension.

Words beginning with the “k” sound often communicate harshness or force. Politicians can have *power*, but when they have *clout* you know they’re powerful. *Claws* seem more menacing than *talons*. *Carcass* or *corpse* is a harsher way of saying *dead body*. An ungraceful person is more *awkward* if described as a *clod*. In Chapter 10 we stressed the importance of choosing precise, accurate words. Here we are saying the writer striving for style ought to go one step further. Sound communicates. Look at both the meanings of words and their sounds.

IMAGERY

.....

As writers, we are the eyes and ears of our audience. If we do our job well, we should be able to accurately re-create an event, a scene, a person, a moment in time for our audience. If we try harder, if we write with style, we can re-create in such vivid detail that our audience feels it has experienced what we write about. Including descriptive detail, showing rather than telling and using quotations and anecdotes are all stylistic techniques that can bring the subject close to the audience.

Use Descriptive Detail

Remember the buildings at Tupperware headquarters that looked like plastic containers? Remember the faces of the couple—colorless and almost round from crying—whose sick dog lay on a steel table? This is descriptive detail. It can be a phrase, a sentence or the makings of an entire scene. Whatever it is, it focuses on particulars, illuminating details that help paint a picture. Consider this description of a woman of another era:

She had style: the silk kerchief tied at the throat, the high heels she wore even to go food shopping, the straight skirts with kick pleats, the single eyebrow raised, a trick she perfected as a teenager after long hours in front of the mirror. She had beautiful eyebrows, high and arched, never plucked too thin. She had beautiful eyes, too, a clear, pale blue, with dark lashes that needed no mascara.

The details, carefully observed, bring the reader closer.

Descriptive detail can capture an action, help re-create an event or paint a scene. The writing need not be fancy. Plain, crisp language is your best ally, as in this description of a house:

Pancho's new house was on the outskirts of town on a half-acre of scorched dirt stubbled with desert weed and brush, an old wooden barn in back, a big, misshapen tamarisk tree in front. It was a squat, ugly, flat-roofed building made of chunks of rock set in concrete troweled over chicken wire. The rock was the color of dried blood.

Show, Don't Tell

When you *tell* the audience something, you stand between the audience and the subject to offer judgments:

Leah was a busy girl.

This “descriptive” sentence fails to describe. It summarizes the writer's conclusions instead of presenting details, images and concrete examples that would help readers draw their own conclusions. It *tells* rather than *shows*. Contrast it with this:

Leah rushed from basketball practice to a clarinet lesson to her a capella singing group, after which she studied her lines for the play, did two hours of French homework and cleaned her room.

Now *that's* busy. The details—not the writer's judgment—lead the reader to the conclusion.

Use Quotations

Lively, involving writing almost always includes people. The Wall Street Journal discovered this years ago and pioneered a style for writing about complex economic issues. It was deceptively simple: The stories all began with people whom the reader got to know through description and quotation. A complicated analytical piece on student loans would begin with one student and his story. Those who may have had little initial interest in reading a story about the economics of student loans would suddenly find themselves involved in the compelling personal story of a single student. Now hooked, they read on.

One way to bring people to the forefront of a story is to let them talk, to quote them. A *quotation* is a verbatim statement—the words between

the quotation marks are the actual words spoken by the person being quoted. During the information-gathering process, media writers may listen to speeches; attend meetings and conferences; interview by e-mail, telephone or in person; or stand in the background and listen to conversation. All the while they are scribbling notes or taping or both. When it comes to writing, they can be faced with pages and pages of quotations. How do they decide which to use and which to discard?

The first and most important consideration is *content*. Quoted material, like everything else the writer decides to include, should add to the audience's understanding of the message. The next consideration is *style*. Well-chosen quotations can be powerful elements in a story. They can:

- Bring the audience in direct contact with the person
- Capture and communicate a person's uniqueness
- Contribute to showing rather than telling
- Bring personality and passion to issues (even "dull" ones)
- Make a person—and a story—come alive

A well-chosen quotation clearly and vividly communicates something about the person. It is brief enough to hold the audience's interest. It expresses an idea that you, the writer, could not have said better. The last criterion is important. Sometimes people are long-winded; sometimes they go off on tangents. If you quote them (unless you are trying to show their long-windedness), you risk boring or confusing your audience. If the material is important enough to include, paraphrase it in your own words. Save quotations for strong, lively material.

But it's not just a quotation that can capture a person's uniqueness and enliven a story; it is how what was said was said—the context. The audience must be placed next to the person, must see and hear the person as he or she speaks. Consider the way quotations in context make this locker-room scene come alive:

The heat and the anger redden Jody's face as she stalks off the court and down to the locker room. She doesn't wait for the team to find seats on the long wooden bench before she starts in on them.

"You're making them look like goddamn all-Americans out there!" she screams. "You're dragging up and down the court with your tongues hanging out." She makes her voice whiny without

lowering the decibel level. “*It’s too hot and you’re too tired. I am just not interested in hearing that, ladies. You should never have let them back into the game. Never. Now go back out there and play.*”

Here’s another example. Note how the writer incorporates the contextual material as she goes along. Description and quotation work hand in hand as the writer introduces the subject of this newspaper profile, then 90-year-old Alice Roosevelt Longworth:

“I still,” she muses, rapping her bony fingers against her graying head, “more or less have my, what they call, marbles,” and she pulls her flowered shawl around her a little closer, throws her head back and laughs gleefully.

This quotation does everything a good quotation should. The reader can *hear* the subject talking.

Use Anecdotes

An anecdote is a short account of an incident, a “mini story” with a beginning, middle and end. An anecdote illustrates a key point in the story or highlights an important theme, offering detail and insight not possible any other way. It *shows* something the writer could have *told*, but in the telling would have weakened. Anecdotes can require a major expenditure of words, and media writers are often strapped for space or time. That’s why it is vital to choose wisely, selecting that one moment that reveals, unmask or captures some quintessential truth about the subject. Here is a well-told anecdote in a Los Angeles Times magazine story about the lost art of train travel.

Joseph, a burly ex-Marine, is munching peanuts and gazing out the big domed windows of the Pacific Parlour Car. We are traveling on the Coast Starlight, the train that runs between Los Angeles and Seattle, a 1,389-mile trek that is arguably the most beautiful stretch of railroad track in the country.

I met Joseph only a few hours ago, but already I know more about him than I do about some of my closest friends. I know about his dying mother, his sister’s disappearing husbands, the writing contest he once won, the six months he spent living out of his truck and his nonexistent sperm count. This is the odd and completely wonderful dynamic that occurs on long-distance

trains. People who would never meet in “real life”—like Joseph and me—form brief but intense connections when they are in limbo, when they relax into that timeless stretch between here and there.

It’s after dinner on the second evening of the trip. The train sidles along the Columbia River, passing through the rich river-bottom farmland north of Portland, Ore., and makes its way north to hug Puget Sound. This journey is supposed to take 35 hours, but because of a prolonged delay—typical for this train, which has earned the nickname the Coast Starlate—we have already been onboard 35 hours and are still a good three hours from our destination.

Joseph starts laughing.

“You know,” he says, “someone could take off from LAX right now and still beat us to Seattle.” We are both quiet for a moment, munching our peanuts. I smile and shake my head. He looks over at me. “Yeah, I know what you mean,” he says, although I have not said anything. “I feel sorry for them too.”

This anecdote takes a while to relate, but it is worth it. It sets a scene, introduces a character and sets up a major theme. It is fun to read—and it has a point. Imagine the writer just telling what the anecdote showed: People who travel on trains get to be friends, and they don’t seem to care how long it takes to get where they’re going. The telling makes the story flat and colorless; the showing brings it to life. Well-told anecdotes are the product of superior observation and interviewing skills as well as sophisticated writing skills. They are tough to do, but very much worth the effort. Like descriptive detail, quotations and other “show, don’t tell” techniques, anecdotes add zest to your writing.

WRITING WITH STYLE

“Rich, ornate prose is hard to digest, generally unwholesome and sometimes nauseating,” writes E. B. White in the classic, “The Elements of Style.” Lively, original writing, on the other hand, is a delicately seasoned dish one can savor.

Writers spend their lives learning how to create irresistible prose. They read voraciously. They play with different ideas. They sweat the details. They make mistakes. But if they love their craft, and they love the language—and they have the patience and perseverance it takes — they (*you!*) can learn to write compelling, memorable prose.

This page intentionally left blank

CHAPTER
12

Sense and Sensitivity

Language can be empathetic (*I know just how you feel.*) or antagonistic (*Get off my land!*). It can be nurturing (*I care about you.*) or threatening (*I'm going to kill you!*). And as anyone who has ever been called—take your pick—*stupid, ugly, cheap, geeky, gawky, ditz, skanky, lazy, idiotic, dim-witted* or any of thousands of other words we can't and won't print here, language can also be hurtful. Whoever said “sticks and stones may break my bones but names will never harm me” apparently didn't get called many bad names—or had thicker skin than most of us. In fact, language *can* hurt. Words can sting. Language matters, words matter, in important, specific and very human ways. As writers, it is our job, our collective responsibility, to use language not just correctly, crisply and creatively—but sensitively.

Few journalists other than radio shock jocks (if they can be considered journalists) would consider using direct insults in writing. But using language embedded in stereotypes can be just as insulting: the helpless female, the brutish male, the creaky and cranky oldster, the terrorist Arab, the mobster Italian, the miserly Jew. Stereotypes are never kind. They demean not only the group being stereotyped but also all of us who strive to live in a civilized society.

What can writers do about this? We can't change the world, but we can do our part. Words by themselves do not cause nor can they solve the problems associated with insulting, unfair, discriminatory or hurtful treatment of others. But if we writers consciously or unconsciously use language that insults or that reinforces stereotypes, we support a world of prejudice and inequity. On the other hand, if we

treat people fairly and sensitively—and individually—in our writing, we help create the kind of world in which most of us would like to live.

Unfortunately, this simple, reasonable concept of treating people fairly with words has itself become an object of insult and ridicule. Mocked as “political correctness” by some, it has been exaggerated to the point of silliness and come to mean, in certain quarters, that any remotely critical comment must be softened to the point of mush. “Gee,” political correctness critics smirk, “should we start calling short people *height disadvantaged*? How about people who can’t carry a tune? Let’s call them *tonally challenged*.” It’s certainly true that any reasonable concept can be taken to a ridiculous extreme, as these examples show. The point is that sensitive use of the language is a reasonable concept.

Language should help us appreciate and write about differences among people as it promotes fairness and tolerance. Choosing and using nondiscriminatory language is simple once you attune your sensitivities. Let’s consider how to avoid several hurtful “-isms” in writing: sexism, heterosexism, racism, ageism and, for lack of a better term, “able-bodiedism.”

SEXISM

.....

Sexist language insults, stereotypes or excludes women. It treats men as the norm and women—although they make up 52 percent of the population—as the exception, the “other.” Sexist language treats women as inferior to men, thus contributing to both the perception and the reality of inequality between the sexes. Inclusive, nonsexist, nondiscriminatory language, on the other hand, can help create a cultural environment that will not support existing inequities. It also simultaneously reflects the many positive changes that have already happened in the workplace and in the home.

Man Does Not Include Woman

One of the most insidious forms of sexism is choosing words meant to refer to both sexes that actually exclude women. We understand the word *man*, for example, to mean a male human being (as in “The man wore a

suit and tie”). When we use the same word to mean both male and female human beings (as in “Peace on earth, goodwill to *men*” or “All *men* are created equal”), we have a problem. How can one word simultaneously support two different meanings? How can one word be both gender-exclusive (male only) and gender-inclusive (male and female)? It’s like saying: “Sometimes when I write the word *apple*, I mean apple. But other times when I write the word *apple*, I mean apple and orange. I leave it to you to figure out which is the operative meaning.” It’s confusing.

When elementary school girls and boys were asked to draw pictures to accompany a hypothetical history textbook with supposedly gender-inclusive chapter titles like “Colonial Man” and “Democratic Man”—*man* here was supposed to be synonymous with *people*—they weren’t confused at all. All the boys and just about all the girls drew pictures of men—male human beings, that is. We may talk about the generic, or gender-inclusive *man*, but in fact *man* is generally understood as male only.

Our language has a wide variety of inclusive words. When we mean “men and women,” we have the linguistic capability to say so. General references should always be inclusive:

Instead of	Use
man, men	person, people
mankind	people
founding fathers	founders, forebears
gentlemen’s agreement	informal agreement
manpower	work force
to man (verb)	to staff, operate

The Myth of the Generic *He*

Just as *man* cannot mean both men only and men and women both, so too *he* cannot refer to a male person at certain times and both genders at other times. When you use *he*, you communicate maleness, whether that is your intention or whether that is the reality. For example:

A doctor must care first about his patients.

A child will gain confidence if he is allowed to make his own decisions.

Are all doctors men? Are all children male? Use of *he* or *him* presumes and communicates gender exclusivity. The rule is simple: Never use *he*

or *him* unless you are referring to a male. If you mean to be gender-inclusive, you have three choices:

1. When you must use a pronoun to refer to a noun of undetermined or inclusive gender (*doctor, child*), recast the sentence with plurals. *They* and *them* are gender-inclusive:

Doctors must care first about their patients.

Children will gain confidence if they are allowed to make their own decisions.

2. If sentence structure or meaning would be impaired by the plural, use *he or she*, *his or her*, or *him or her*. This construction can be a bit awkward—but not as awkward as excluding more than half the human race:

A doctor must care first about his or her patients.

3. Consider whether the pronoun is actually needed. Perhaps the sentence can be rewritten:

A child will gain confidence if allowed to make independent decisions.

The words *everyone* and *everybody* can present problems here. Their meaning is clearly plural, as in *many people* (presumably both male and female). But grammatically, these words take the singular, as in *Everyone is invited to the party*. Because they take the singular but imply the plural, look what can happen:

Everyone should remain in his seat.

To be grammatically correct, the sentence needs a singular pronoun. But a singular pronoun—*he* is almost always chosen, not *she*—communicates gender exclusivity. What to do? First, what NOT to do: Do not break a grammatical rule to create gender inclusivity. Do NOT write:

Everyone should remain in their seat.

You could write:

Everyone should remain in his or her seat.

but there’s a clunkiness factor at work here. Better to find another way to say *everybody*, as in:

People should remain in their seats.

All the movie-goers should remain in their seats.

From Exclusive to Inclusive Job Titles

A few hundred feet from a group of workers cutting roadside brush, you see a sign “Crew at Work.” Not so long ago you would have seen “Men at Work.” Our language responds to societal change. Jobs that used to be male only and that carried male-only designations are now filled by both men and women. It is important to use the inclusive job designations. Here are some common ones:

Instead of	Use
mailman	mail carrier
policeman/policemen	police officer, police force
fireman	firefighter
newsman	reporter
businessman	businessperson, business executive, entrepreneur
salesman	sales clerk, sales representative
foreman	supervisor
congressman	senator, representative
chairman	head, presiding officer, chair
spokesman	representative, leader, spokesperson

Consistent Treatment of the Sexes

The consistency rule is simply stated and easily followed: When you write about men and women, treat them the same. If you refer to a man by last name only, do so for a woman. If you include such details as marital status, age and physical appearance when writing about a woman, make sure you would do the same if the subject were a man.

Let’s say Mr. X is your city’s newly elected mayor. Would you consider writing the following?

With his flashing brown eyes and warm, gracious smile, Mr. X, grandfather of four, took over city hall yesterday.

It sounds ridiculous, doesn't it? But, because of deeply entrenched sexism that allows women to be judged by different criteria than men, a *female* mayor might very well be written about in this way. How about a sports story in which the new female coach is described as a “curly-headed blonde?” Just imagine using a similar physical description for a male coach. It is laughable. If it would be inappropriate to offer this information about a man, it is equally inappropriate to offer it about a woman.

Contrary to the cliché, consistency is *not* the hobgoblin of small minds. It is a tool for nonsexist writing. Concern yourself particularly with consistency in the following five areas:

1. **Titles, names and references.** *Ms.*, which signals that the person named is female, but unlike *Miss* or *Mrs.*, does not give information about her marital status, is the courtesy title of choice for women. It parallels *Mr.*, which signals maleness without marital status. When you use one, use the other. If you use titles like *Pres.*, *Sen.* or *Rev.* to refer to a man, refer to a woman in the same way.

Increasingly, publications are doing away with most courtesy titles, especially on second reference. In that case refer to both men and women by last names only, except when you are writing about a couple who share the same last name. Then full names, first names or courtesy titles (used equally for both halves of the couple) will provide clarity. Some writers like the informality of referring to people by their first names. If the story warrants such a tone and the publication allows for this style, first names should be used consistently for the sexes. Do not write “Mr. Burns and his co-worker Liza.”

2. **Marital status and children.** Sometimes a person's marital or parental status is an appropriate and relevant piece of information that should be included in the story. Too often, though, women are defined by marital and parental status and men are not. Test yourself: If you would include the information for a man, do so for a woman. Consider this example:

Nanoscientist David Evans has just launched his own research and development company. Evans, father of three and husband of hospital administrator Claire Rosenfeld, invested more than \$1 million of his own money.

Sound ridiculous?

3. **Physical appearance.** Physical appearance may be completely appropriate to a story. Everyone wants to know how tall the new basketball center is (male or female). The overweight diet doctor, the business executive who wears Birkenstocks—these are all appropriate descriptions that add to readers’ understanding. But too often women’s clothes, bodies and mannerisms are described regardless of their relevance to the story. Women are not objects to be inspected and evaluated; they are, like men, subjects to be written about.
4. **Adding gender.** Most nouns in the English language are gender-inclusive: *writer, author, artist, scientist, doctor*. Treat them as such. Just as you do not need to insert *male* or *man* in front of these nouns when referring to a man in these positions, you should not insert *female* or *woman* when referring to a woman. You would probably never consider writing “*male* author Stephen King.” Why then do we see such constructions as “*female* novelist Anne Rice”? Too frequently, writers add female gender to nouns that are actually gender-inclusive. The implied message: Only men are authors, artists, writers and so on. A woman is the rare exception. Of course if women—or men—are the exception, it’s worth noting in some more sophisticated way.
5. **Equal treatment in word pairs.** When you pair men and women, make sure you choose equal words to refer to both sexes. Adult males and females are men and women; children are boys and girls.

Instead of

man and wife
 man and lady
 men and girls

Use

husband and wife
 man and woman; gentleman and lady
 boys and girls

HETEROSEXISM

Discriminatory or stereotypical language exists for any group whose physical appearance, behavior or beliefs vary from those in the mainstream. Homosexuals have traditionally had a difficult time swimming against that tide, and our language proves the point. We have dozens of words that insult and demean gay men and lesbians (*fag, fairy, dyke, butch*) and many more meant to tease and torment any woman who exhibits traditionally male behavior and any man who does not. Consider

the simple ways writers can rid their language of bias and bigotry. Doing so has nothing to do with endorsing a “lifestyle” and everything to do with treating people as distinct human beings.

Not Everyone Is Heterosexual

Just as sexist language assumes maleness, heterosexist language assumes wholesale heterosexuality. But everyone is not heterosexual. Decades of research, both scientific and historical, have shown that about 10 percent of the population—now as well as centuries ago—is homosexual. That means one in ten of your readers (your colleagues, the writers you admire, the merchants you deal with) is gay. Because homosexuality has carried such a stigma in our society, until recently few gay men and lesbians have gone public with their sexual orientations. Thus many of us may have grown up thinking of homosexuality as a rare occurrence. It isn't.

If you don't immediately assume the heterosexuality of those you write about, you can avoid awkwardness (for example, asking an interview subject why he or she never married) and surprise (upon learning, for example, that a “feminine-looking” woman is a lesbian).

A Person Is Not His or Her Sexual Orientation

Although a person's sexual orientation may be vital to the story—a profile of a gay activist, a church and its homosexual parishioners—many times it is not. If you would not consider writing “The company is owned by heterosexual entrepreneur Leslie Morse,” then why include information about homosexual orientation if, for example, Morse was gay? Even worse is such wording as “an admitted homosexual” (as if the person were admitting to a heinous offense) or a “practicing homosexual” (do we ask heterosexuals if they “practice,” too?).

Beware of Stereotypes and Exceptions

Homosexuals cannot be stereotyped any more than can heterosexuals. They are all ages, all races and ethnicities, all religions. They live in different parts of the country and are employed in all occupations. Some are single; others live with lifelong partners. Some have children; others do not.

It is important to understand this diversity for two reasons. First, it will help you avoid thinking of (and describing) a gay person as a “type.” Second, and probably more important, it will help you guard

against making a point of characteristics that don't conform to the "type," calling special attention to such "oddities" as the lesbian with long hair or the gay man with children. The assumption behind these observations is that all lesbians look a certain way, that all gay men live a certain kind of life. Do all heterosexuals look and act alike?

RACISM

Those Americans of African, Asian, Native American or Hispanic descent—that is, those who look noticeably different from Americans of European descent—are the most obvious victims of racist attitudes, behavior and speech. Racism can affect every part of their lives, from where they live to the medical services they receive, from the quality of their education to their self-esteem and self-image. Racism is a problem of enormous proportion in the United States (and worldwide). Americans of various European ancestries labor under the burden of ethnic stereotypes as well: the arrogant German, the dumb Pole, the drunken Irish. There are more than enough negative and hurtful slurs to go around.

It is unlikely that you would demonstrate overt racism in your writing. But it *is* likely that your judgment would be affected by the long-standing and pervasive stereotypes that exist in our society. Regardless of your own personal goodwill, you assuredly harbor some prejudices; you undoubtedly "see" people through the filter of stereotype. Here is how to make sure your language is prejudice-free.

Don't Identify People by Race

Do not identify a person's race or ethnicity unless it is a relevant or an interesting part of the story. If someone is the first of his or her racial or ethnic group to achieve a certain goal, that fact may be newsworthy (although those "first who" stories can quickly become trite). But if you would not normally identify a person as being "white" in a story, do not use racial identity at all. Relatively few situations require the inclusion of race.

Don't Reinforce Stereotypes by "Exceptions"

Language can reinforce racism by treating people as exceptions to stereotypes, which is just as demeaning as using the stereotype itself. For example, making it a point to call an Italian-American "respectable and law-abiding" implies that most are not, thus reinforcing the Mafia

stereotype. Writing that a Mexican-American is “hardworking and even-tempered” implies that Mexican-Americans in general are indolent and volatile. The negative stereotype is embedded in the “positive” attributes.

Avoid Using “Non-Whites”

Eurocentrism—using white, European culture as the norm—is evident when you refer to people as “non-whites.” Why describe people by what they aren’t? Would you call a 25-year-old a “non-teen”? Would you call a brunette a “non-blonde”? Of course not. Be particularly careful when using the word *minority* as well. In a growing number of U.S. cities, in the state of California and in the world in general, *whites* are the minority.

Be Sensitive to Group Names

Be aware of what members of various racial and ethnic groups call themselves and want to be referred to publicly. These names change with the times. Early in the 20th century, black Americans were called “coloreds” and pressed hard to be called the more respectable term *Negro*. In the 1960s *black* and *Afro-American* were the terms of choice. Today many people prefer *African-American*, a term consistent with how we refer to other Americans of international heritage (*Asian-Americans*, for example). Indians are generally referred to as *American Indians*, as *Native Americans* or as members of particular tribes or confederations. Those descended from Spanish-speaking cultures might be referred to as *Chicano(a)*, *Latino(a)*, *Hispanic* or, more specifically, by country of origin (*Cuban-American*, *Mexican-American*).

Given that the word *minorities* may be factually inaccurate and that *non-whites* is Eurocentric, the search continues for a more sensitive aggregate term. *People of color*, although sometimes used, sounds oddly formal and also can be somewhat less than accurate, as olive-skinned whites of Mediterranean ancestry can be more “colorful” than some people of color. Rather than lump together a variety of racial and ethnic groups and hunt for a single descriptor, it seems preferable to simply list the groups themselves.

AGEISM

Codger, fogy, fossil. Geezer, duffer, coot. Hag, nag, bag, crone. Senile citizens. Our language is not kind to older people.

Older people are feeble, frail and forgetful, crabby, creaky, constipated and curmudgeonly. These are the stereotypes, and they are not only insulting, they are largely inaccurate. The vast majority of older people live healthy, productive and independent lives. The active, alert, involved older person is the *rule*, not the exception.

At the turn of the 20th century, one in 16 Americans was 60 or older. At the turn of the 21st, it's one in six. Within the next decade, it will be one in four. It is past time for writers to learn how to deal accurately and sensitively with older people.

Few writers would actually use any of the offensive terms listed at the beginning of this section, but many might find the stereotypes pervading their writing in more subtle ways. Generally, ageist language reinforces damaging stereotypes by expressing great surprise over those who do not conform to them.

She is still vigorous at 70.

His mind is still sharp at 75.

The implication is that most 70-year-olds lack vigor and that most 75-year-olds are senile. If you refuse to accept the inaccurate stereotypes, you will avoid making insulting statements about “exceptions.”

Although our society (and its language and images) is unkind to older people of both genders, more women than men may be victimized by ageist language. The stigma of aging is greater for women, who, throughout their lives, have traditionally been evaluated more by what they look like than by who they are. A gray-haired or balding man of 65 might be thought of and described as “distinguished” or “at the height of his powers.” A gray-haired woman of 65 is rarely thought of or described in such complimentary terms.

Ageism exists on both ends of the life span. Teenagers are irresponsible, inarticulate, hormone-driven slackers—or so goes the stereotype. That accounts for the ageist singling out of “responsible” and “thoughtful” teens, as if they were the surprising exception rather than, in fact, the rule.

To write sensitively and accurately about people in any age group, question your assumptions and reject stereotypes. Write about people as individuals, not as representatives of, or exceptions to, their age group.

“ABLE-BODIEDISM”

No, that is not a word, and we are not suggesting that it should be! *Able-bodiedism* is a term we’ve coined here to stand for language discrimination against people with disabilities. Tens of thousands of Americans have physical or mental disabilities, some of which limit their activities and impair their performance, some of which do not. A disability does not necessarily “disable” or make one a “disabled person.” Some disabilities simply don’t affect one’s work. (Is the writer in a wheelchair a “disabled writer”?) Other disabilities, in fact, create new abilities.

When writing about people with physical or mental limitations, ask them how they want to be referred to. Also keep in mind this vital rule: People are not their handicaps. People *have* handicaps (limits, impairments, different abilities). Never write:

Arthur Thomas, an epileptic . . .

The handicapped children . . .

Assuming it’s relevant, write instead:

Arthur Thomas, who has epilepsy . . .

The children, who all have handicaps . . .

THE -ISMS GOLDEN RULE

All this advice boils down to one rule: Write about others as you would want them to write about you. You see yourself as an individual who may be male or female, old or young, fat or thin, black, brown, red or white. Consider the stereotypes for each one of these categories. Are you the stereotype or are you a distinct individual? You are, of course, an individual. See—and write about—others with the same regard for and sensitivity to *their* individuality. This is not a matter of being “politically correct.” It is a matter of being human.

PART

TWO

Topical Guide to Grammar and Word Use

Need a quick answer to a grammatical question? You can find it here in Part 2. These brief alphabetical listings are not meant to take the place of the longer discussions in Part 1. But we know that sometimes a writer, in the midst of the hard work of writing, needs an answer right away, or needs a little memory jog, or just needs confirmation of what he or she thinks is right. In truth, even though we wrote this book, as writers we refer to this section ourselves!

Style guides have personalities. Some are scolding and authoritarian, like a bad teacher. Others are so accepting and permissive that they give little sense of direction. Still others are eccentric and seem to reflect the personal preferences and peccadilloes of the author rather than the logic of word use.

We hope the personality of this guide—of this entire book—is like that of a writing mentor, an older and (a little) wiser writer who respects and loves the language and encourages others to do the same.

-able/-ible endings These suffixes (endings to root words) can be frustrating. Why do we have *acceptable* on one hand and *impossible* on the other? There really is no good reason. But it may help to remember that *-able* endings are more common and that in most cases the *-able* suffix is attached to a complete root word (*change* + *able* = *changeable*). As

Chapter 9 emphasizes, imprinting—seeing the words in print many times over—is necessary to avoid the wrong suffix choice. See p. 135 for that list of pesky words.

active voice/passive voice *Voice* refers to the form of a verb. When the subject of the sentence *performs* the action of the verb (“She wrote the story”), the verb (*wrote*) is in the *active voice*. If the subject *receives* the action (“The story was written by her”), the verb (*was written*) is in the *passive voice*. The active voice is always stronger and more direct than the passive voice. You might want passive voice when you need to stress the receiver of the action rather than the performer or when the performer is unknown. See pp. 58–66 for a more complete discussion.

adapt/adopt These two verbs are distinct in their differences. *Adapt* refers to a “change to fit a situation” both in physical and conceptual ways:

The new parents adapted the large walk-in closet to accommodate a bassinet and a changing table.

The anthropologist had to adapt to the customs of the tribal villagers to live among them.

Adopt, however, denotes the action of “taking on,” as in

The council adopted a new rule on jaywalking.
 (“took on”)

It also denotes “taking in,” as in

The family adopted a black Labrador.
 (“took in”)

It denotes “taking up,” as in

The environmentalist adopted a friendly attitude toward the
 (“took up”)
mining company.

adjective This part of speech is a “finishing touch” for a noun or a pronoun. As a modifier, the adjective describes, limits and adds important detail. The writer’s biggest challenge with adjectives is choosing the right ones—in meaning, nuance and tone—for the job. Adjectives are the hue and chroma of our writing. The spectrum of color they can provide is almost limitless.

adverb Adverbs generally answer *how*, *why* and *when*. Strong adverbs work in tandem with descriptive verbs to create powerful imagery. In expressing matters of degree, time, place and manner, however, adverbs can modify not only verbs but also adjectives and other adverbs. Like the adjective, the adverb must be chosen carefully and applied precisely. Remember that not all adverbs end in *-ly*. (That would be much too simple!)

adverse/averse Although these adjectives sound alike, they have distinct meanings. *Adverse* means “unfavorable or hostile”:

College officials did not expect the adverse reaction to the tuition surcharge.

If you want to describe someone’s reluctance to do something, you should use *averse*:

I am not averse to approving your request.

advice/advise Don’t mix these up! *Advice* is a noun denoting an “opinion,” while *advise* is a verb that means “to counsel” or “to recommend.”

He wondered about his friend’s advice to break up with his girlfriend.
(*noun*: “suggestion”)

The lawyer advised a quick response to the threatened lawsuit.
(*verb*: “to suggest”)

affect/effect A pox on this pair! Misusing one for the other is one of the most common usage errors. It’s true that the words sound alike, but they are most often different parts of speech. *Affect* is almost always a verb that means “to influence” or “to pretend to have.” *Effect* is almost always a noun that means “result” or “impact.” For example:

The new program will affect millions of welfare recipients.
(*verb*: “to influence”)

The defendant affected a carefree manner.
(*verb*: “to pretend to have”)

Voters are questioning the effect of term limits.
(*noun*: “impact”)

But just to make life interesting, *effect* is occasionally used as a verb in formal writing to mean “to bring about,” and *affect* can be a noun in very narrow usage to denote certain behavior in psychology:

Top management effected some personnel changes.
(*verb*: “to bring about”)

Michael’s flat affect concerned his psychologist.
(*noun*: “psychological state”)

-aholic endings Here is proof that language indeed lives. Through slang usage *-aholic* tacked onto a word has come to mean “one obsessed with,” as in *workaholic* and *chocaholic*. Presumably these new words owe their existence to *alcoholic*. But instead of taking the accepted suffix *-ic*, meaning “of or pertaining to,” from the root word *alcohol*, the creators of these new words stole (and misspelled) another syllable and a half. That this linguistic configuration makes no sense bothers only purists. The rest of us enjoy new words with distinct meanings.

aid/aide Don’t be fooled: *Aides* (“assistants”) give *aid* (“help, assistance”) to their bosses. *Aid* also can be a verb, but *aide* can be only a noun. So, constructions such as “the president’s aide” and “giving aid and comfort to the enemy” are correct.

all/any/most/some These pronouns can take singular or plural verbs, depending on the meaning. If the word carries the meaning of “general amount or quantity,” it is singular:

All of the contraband was seized at the port.

Some of his testimony was stricken from the record.

If you can read “individual and number” into the sentence, the plural verb should be used:

All of the children were safe.

Have any of their relatives been notified?

See p. 77 and the entry for *none*.

all ready/already By the end of this section you should be *all ready* to avoid confusion between the adjective phrase *all ready* and the adverb *already*. You are “completely prepared” to do something when “all”

modifies “ready.” But you’ve learned something “by now” or “by this time” when you know the meaning of the adverb *already*.

So:

Tom was all ready to board the flight when his pager beeped.

Tom was already on the plane when his pager beeped.

allude/elude These meanings shouldn’t elude you. If you are making an indirect reference to something, you *allude* to it (if you want to mention it directly, you *refer* to it):

The candidate alluded to his opponent’s prison record.

Elude is your choice if you mean “to escape or to avoid detection.”

The fugitive eluded the search party for two weeks.

a lot Yes, *a lot* can mean a parcel of land. But the usual confusion with this casual phrase meaning “many” or “much” is its appearance as one word. It is not correct to write *alot*.

I have seen a lot of bad grammar errors in my time.

Always use the phrase as two words.

among/between These two prepositions will probably always confuse us. You may have learned this rule: *Among* relates to more than two persons or things, and *between* applies to only two. But it’s not that simple. A truer guide is this: If there is a definite relation involved, *between* is preferred, no matter what the number:

Between you and me, this business will never succeed.

Negotiations have broken down between the government mediator, autoworkers and management.

Among is properly used where there is no explicit relationship stated and when distribution is stressed:

The handbills were passed out among the crowd.

The reward was divided among five families in Illinois and Indiana.

One other point about these prepositions: Remember that if they are used in a simple prepositional phrase, their objects and personal pronouns will be in the objective case. For more on this, see p. 90.

antecedents Often hiding in a sentence like a serpent in tall grass, an *antecedent* is the noun to which a pronoun refers. A clear connection between the antecedent and the pronoun is necessary for the sentence to make sense and read well. But sometimes the antecedent of a pronoun is unclear, and writers may have problems with agreement between the antecedent and the verb. In the following sentences, proper antecedents are underlined:

Sarah is one of those people who never require more than four hours of sleep.

(Why is the antecedent *people* instead of *one*? Because the sentence tells us that there is more than one person who can get by on that amount of sleep, that clause needs a plural verb, as *people require*.)

Geronimo Jackson is the only one of the finalists who isn't nervous. (In this sentence only one finalist isn't nervous, hence the singular verb.)

Zane's theory is intriguing, but not many of his colleagues agree with it.

(The pronoun *it* properly refers to the antecedent *theory*. The intriguing theory, not Gerry, is the focus.)

a number of/the number of The intended number of these phrases depends on the article. If the article is *a*, the meaning is plural:

A number of students are going on the field trip.

If the article is *the*, the meaning is more indefinite (or is seen as a unit) and therefore is singular:

The number of West Nile virus cases is increasing.

These phrases illustrate an easy-to-remember tip about subject–verb agreement: If the phrase or word denotes “a general amount or quantity,” the verb is singular; if the phrase or word denotes “a more definable number of individuals,” the verb is plural. See p. 73.

anxious/eager Why so many people use *anxious* when they mean *eager* we don't know. *Anxious* implies fear and worry:

The mayor says she is anxious about the outcome of the election.

If you are stimulated and excited at the prospect of doing something, you are *eager* to do it:

Lizzie is eager to join the debate team.

You can only be anxious about something; you cannot be anxious *to do* that thing.

anybody/anyone and any body/any one As one word, *anybody* and *anyone* are indefinite pronouns that refer to no one in a particular. As two words, they become adjective noun combinations that are more pointed—“one (person or thing)” of a defined group.

Anybody can learn to swim with an attentive instructor.
(possible for all who are interested)

Any one (of the players) could be substituted in the soccer game.
(any player on the team)

It's common for *any one* to be followed by *of*. If you can insert a noun after an implied *of*, then the adjective–noun combination is a must.

appositive This is a word, phrase or clause that renames or adds information about the word that precedes it. Words in apposition have a side-by-side relationship. They are important to identify because they have some bearing on punctuation and case decisions. For example, a *restrictive* appositive is one that is essential to the meaning of a sentence and thus requires no commas:

My friend John helped write headlines while his friend Susan did
(appos.) (appos.)

the design.

(A comma would not be correct after *friend* because *John* and *Susan* are essential to the meaning of the subject.)

A *nonrestrictive* appositive still has a side-by-side relationship, but its meaning is not essential to the sentence. It must be set off by commas:

Mullins, a proven clutch player, has a secure place on the roster.
(appos.)

as if/like These are *not* interchangeable. *As if* acts as a conjunction and introduces a clause:

It looks as if it will rain.

Like, a preposition, takes a simple object and cannot introduce a clause:

It looks like rain.

Some grammarians say that *like* may evolve into a conjunction. (We're not holding our breath.)

as/than Because *as* and *than* can be both prepositions and conjunctions, case selection may be tricky. If these words are used as conjunctions, it is most likely to make comparisons. If so, the nominative case of the pronoun is needed:

AS-BA There's no one more handsome than he.
 ("Than he is handsome" is understood as the second clause.)

However, *as* and *than* can also be prepositions:

Why did you pick Beth rather than her?

Obviously, no comparison is being made here. The pronoun following the preposition must be in the objective case.

as well as This phrase, which connects a subordinate thought to the main one, can cause agreement problems between subject and verb. Remember that the main subject—not any word or phrase parenthetical to it—controls the number and the person of the verb:

The house, as well as its contents, was destroyed in the early-morning fire.

Similar parenthetical phrases are *together with*, *in addition to* and *along with*. You'll find it easier to isolate the true subject of the sentence if you set off these phrases with commas. See p. 70.

bad/badly Don't feel bad if you use these words badly! *Bad* is an adjective. In linking-verb constructions in which you want to describe the subject, *bad* is the correct choice:

The mayor said he felt bad about the library budget defeat.
 (l.v.)(adj.)

This sentence describes the mayor's state of being, not his physical ability to feel. When you describe some quality of the verb instead of the subject, you use the adverb *badly* (this often occurs with intransitive verbs):

The prime minister took her defeat badly.
 (intrans. verb) (adv.)
 (*Badly* describes the verb *took*, not the noun *prime minister*.)

because of/due to You should always use *because of* when matching cause to effect. It is used when the writer can ask *why* in a sentence:

The stock market crashed because of panic selling.

Due to should be used only in a linking-verb construction. *Due* is an adjective; its preposition *to* relates to the condition of a subject:

The increase in the cost of burritos is due to soaring prices of jack cheese.

Note that you can't ask *why* in this construction, but you can in the next, which is why *because of*, not *due to*, is correct:

Because of the budget crunch this year, no new positions will be created.

beside/besides *Beside* means “next to” or “at the side of.” *Besides* means “in addition to”:

The nervous guard stood beside the visiting dignitary.
(next to)

Besides Jake and me, only Erik knew of the escape plan.
(in addition to)

Remember that simple objects of prepositions always take the objective case.

bi-/semi- *Bi-* means “two,” and *semi-* means “half.” *Bimonthly* means every two months; *semimonthly* means twice a month. If you mean something that happens twice a year, use *semiannual* rather than *biannual*, even though the dictionary recognizes both. That will avoid confusion with *biennial* (something that happens every two years). Note that the prefixes *bi-* and *semi-* are hyphenated only when the word that follows them begins with an *i* or is capitalized.

both/few/many/several These indefinite pronouns always take a plural verb. See p. 74.

brand names/trademarks These are business-created words that have not fallen into generic usage. Do you really want to refer to a specific product, or do you just want to mention the process? If you want

to mention the process or the generic name, avoid brand name reference. Do not write, for example:

The spy xeroxed all the documents.

For one thing *Xerox*, a registered trade name, isn't a verb; the spy can *photocopy* the documents, but he or she can't *xerox*, *canonize* or *savinize* them. Other examples are *Scotch tape* (a brand of cellophane tape), *Coke* (one of many cola beverages), *Mace* (a brand of tear gas) and *Kleenex* (a brand of facial tissue). All brand names and trademarks should be capitalized.

bureaucratese/jargon Jargon has changed our language—but not for the better. These words and phrases, used by government workers, scientists, doctors, computer programmers and a host of other professionals, usually do more to obscure than elucidate. For example, you no longer measure the effect of deficit spending on a budget; you ascertain how the program will *impact fiscal planning*. You no longer evaluate things; you *effect a needs assessment*. A heart attack becomes an *M.I.* (myocardial infarction). When these professionals talk to one another, their language may be both efficient and precise. But when journalists write for broader audiences, this specialized language does not work.

but *But* is most frequently a conjunction, connecting words and phrases of equal rank and implying a contrast between those elements. It almost always requires a comma between the clauses it separates:

The commissioners approved the budget, but they vetoed a room tax provision.

But also can be a preposition meaning “except”:

Everybody but me went to the party.

Note that the objective case is required for the pronoun.

Can *but* be used to begin a sentence, like the conjunctive adverb *however*? But of course—if you don't overdo it.

can/may Please preserve the distinction between these words. *Can* denotes ability, and *may* denotes possibility and permission. If your

sentence is in the form of a question, *may* is almost always your choice:

May I go to the exhibit?
(Permission, not ability, is the question.)

Do you think I can win this election?
(Do I have the ability to win?)

CA-CH

Some stylebook authorities have thrown in the towel on the interchangeability of *can* and *may*, but we're not willing to give up the fight. However, remember that *may* can also express a possibility.

I may buy that new boat we've been talking about.

case *Who or whom? Us or we?* Understanding *case* helps us make these grammatical choices. The three cases are nominative, objective and possessive. Certain pronouns change their form to accommodate a change in case. Nouns change only in their possessive case. See Chapter 7.

cancel/censure These words have different meanings, pronunciations and spellings, so what's the confusion? Perhaps it's because the meanings are interrelated. You can *cancel* materials by screening, changing or forbidding them.

The press officer cancelled all dispatches from the battle lines.

You generally can *censure* only people—by condemning them or expressing disapproval of their actions.

The senators censured their colleague because he attempted to censor a staff report.

These words can also be nouns. So, you can have an “official government censor” as well as a “resolution of censure.”

chair/chairperson We believe the term *chairman* unfairly and incorrectly assumes maleness of that position. It is one of many such terms in our language (for example, *policeman* and *businessman*). For years authoritative dictionaries have referred to *chair* as “a person who presides over a meeting” and “an office or position of authority.” A person—man or woman—can chair a meeting or be a program chair. It assumes nothing but the position itself. *Chairperson* seems a bit more awkward to us, but it may be what an organization chooses to call its leader. The person's official title should be used. See Chapter 12.

cite/site/sight These homophones have nothing in common when used in a sentence except their pronunciation. You make reference to: a person or thing when you *cite*, a piece of land when you are on *site*, or a visual spectacle when you *sight*.

The first, *cite*, is always a verb:

The tribunal cited the leader as one of the world's worst dictators.

A *site* is always a noun:

The site of the 1964 World's Fair used to be a garbage dump.

But you can *sight* (verb) or have *sight* (noun):

She sighted the island from the ship after thinking that none was
(*verb*: saw)

in sight.
(*noun*: a view)

clause This is a group of words that contains both a subject and a verb. An *independent clause* (otherwise known as a *sentence*) expresses a complete thought and can stand alone. A *dependent clause* has a subject and a verb, but the meaning is incomplete, and the clause cannot stand alone. See p. 48.

clutter This is the excess baggage that obscures clarity in writing. Mercilessly prune from your prose these flabby words, redundant phrases or just plain longwinded expressions. Sharpen those clippers—and review Chapter 10.

collective nouns They look singular (*jury, herd, committee*) but obviously imply plurality. Or they can look plural (*athletics, politics*) but imply singularity. What's a writer to do? Here's the answer: If the noun is considered as a whole, the verb and associated pronouns are singular:

The committee is meeting today.

Politics is a dirty business.

If the unit is broken up or considered individually, the plural verb is required:

The herd of cattle have scattered.

The senator's politics are changeable.

See p. 76.

collision This is a violent contact between *moving* bodies. An accident between a moving car and a stationary telephone pole is not a collision; it is a *crash*. But an oil tanker might *collide* with a frigate. In a more figurative sense, ideas, opinions and, yes, *words* can collide.

colon This punctuation mark (:) introduces thoughts, quotations, examples or a series. Capitalize matter following a colon only if it can stand alone as a sentence:

Her parting words inspired them for years: “You must think outside the box.”

Besides cartooning, Charles Schulz had one great passion: hockey.

comma splice Also known as *comma fault*, this is a mistake by the careless writer who joins two independent clauses without either a coordinating conjunction or a semicolon:

The council approved the resolution, the mayor vetoed it the next day. (The sentence lacks the conjunction *but* or a semicolon between clauses.)

He enjoys reviewing movies, however, he says he can’t waste his time on “trash like this.”

(Presence of the conjunctive adverb *however* requires a semicolon between clauses—that is, between *movies* and *however*.)

In short sentences the comma splice has received the blessing of most grammarians. “You’ll like her, she’s a Leo” can survive without a conjunction or a semicolon. An accomplished writer who does not want the harsh stop of a semicolon to slow the meter of a sentence might employ the comma splice as a stylistic tool. But, like the sentence fragment, the comma splice should be used sparingly—and only by writers who know what they’re doing.

compared to/compared with These are about as interchangeable as American and European voltage. When you liken one thing to another, you *compare* it to:

She compared writing a book to running a weekly marathon.

When you place items side by side to examine their similarities and differences, use *compared with*:

The study compared last winter’s rainfall with winter rains for the previous 10 years.

As you can see, the use of *compared to* is figurative and metaphorical. *Compared with*, on the other hand, is statistical rather than creative.

complement/compliment Both of these terms can be nouns or verbs. *Complement* means “that which completes something, supplements it or brings it to perfection.” *Compliment* means “an expression of praise or admiration.” So, a necklace might *complement* a blouse, but you would *compliment* the wearer on the necklace.

CO

compose/comprise *Compose* is not as direct as *comprise*. Something is *composed of* other things (made up of); however, one thing *comprises* (takes in, includes) other things. The following are correct usages:

His salad dressing was composed of olive oil, balsamic vinegar and puree of turnip.

Her speech comprised four major themes.

As you can see from the last example, the whole (*speech*) comprises the parts (*themes*). A whole is never *comprised of* the parts. That would be the same as saying (nonsensically) that “the whole is included of its parts.” But *comprise* is not a word we would use more than occasionally. Sometimes it just doesn’t sound right.

compound modifiers These are two adjectives or an adverb joined with an adjective to modify a noun. Often a hyphen is needed to join these modifiers to make the meaning clear:

mud-splattered bike

well-intentioned meaning

hard-driving perfectionist

Modifiers do not require a hyphen if they are preceded by *very* or an *-ly* adverb. These adverbs obviously modify what follows, and there is no mistaking their connection:

very energetic teacher

highly motivated student

Don’t string together too many modifiers in the name of description and economy. You’ll simply get clutter.

conjunction The *conjunction* links words, phrases and clauses; if used properly, it provides both logic and rhythm to a sentence. Note, for example, how the conjunction *and* provides a sense of parallelism or equality to a clause:

The border guard quickly stamped the passport and cheerfully directed the tourist to the nearest town.

But (a great conjunction—it provides a contrast or shows a lack of unity) note how the conjunction *and* can be used improperly when it links obviously unequal or unrelated elements in a sentence:

She came in early to work this morning, and she is buying a new car.

Also see *as if/like* on p. 191.

conjunctive adverb Words like *however*, *therefore* and *nevertheless* may look like conjunctions, but they are really adverbs. Why is this distinction important? It's because conjunctive adverbs need a semicolon—not a comma (as conjunctions)—to link sentence parts. For example:

The book is a best seller; however, I find it pretentious and poorly written.

See p. 110.

continual/continuous *Continual* means “repeated or intermittent.” *Continuous* means “unbroken”:

Must I suffer these continual interruptions?

The parched hiker imagined a continuous line of canteens stretched across the barren horizon.

convince/persuade If you think these words are identical in meaning, we're just going to have to persuade you that they're not. We'll do that until you're convinced! To begin with, people do not *convince* others of anything; that action is called *persuasion*:

His doctor persuaded him to take a vacation.

To be *convinced* is to be secure in a decision or a principle. It is always an adjective, not a verb:

He was convinced nothing was wrong.

If a person attempts to *persuade* another and is successful, the first person is considered *persuasive*. Obviously the argument has been

convincing. The process is to *persuade*; the hoped-for result is to be *convinced*. Got that now? Convinced? Or do you need to be persuaded?

council/counsel The difference between *counsel* (a verb or noun depending on use in a sentence) and *council* (always a noun) is “one to many.” When you seek *counsel*, you generally pursue advice from one person, such as an attorney or school teacher. But when you look to a *council*, you attend the meetings or hear the deliberations of a body of elected or appointed officials. Three examples:

The teacher counseled her students to carefully review the
(verb)
sample exam.

I have always appreciated his thoughtful counsel.
(noun)

The city council will meet tonight.
(noun)

damage/destroy The distinction here is one of degree. There can be various levels of damage (slight, widespread), but destruction is the highest degree of damage. Therefore, it is redundant to say that “the building was completely destroyed in the fire.” Anything less than destruction is simply some level of damage, as in

Fire slightly damaged the offices of Planned Parenthood last night.

Destruction needs no intensification:

The tornado destroyed twenty homes and severely damaged thirty others.

dangling modifiers A modifier “dangles” when it does not directly modify anything in the sentence. For example:

Facing indictment for insider trading, the grand jury called her to testify.

The participial phrase *facing indictment for insider trading* has nothing to modify. The first referent we see is *grand jury*. But that can’t logically be the referent. Poor sentence construction has buried the true referent—the person who is facing indictment. The sentence needs to be rewritten:

Facing indictment for insider trading, Stewart was called by the grand jury to testify.

(Yes, this is in the passive voice, but the recipient of the action, Stewart, is more important than its initiator, the grand jury.)

Dangling modifiers most often occur at the beginnings of sentences. Although they tend to be *verbals* (participial phrases, gerund phrases and infinitive phrases), appositives, clauses and simple adjectives can dangle as well. The test is whether the person or thing being modified by the word, phrase or clause is in the sentence. Dangling modifiers destroy coherent thought. Rewrite or revise the sentence to include the missing referent. See p. 146.

DA

dash An enticing piece of punctuation because of its informality, directness and drama, the *dash* (—) is often used excessively and incorrectly. Media writers should consider routinely using commas, colons and parentheses and saving dashes for special occasions. The two main uses of the dash in media writing are as follows:

1. To create drama and emphasis at the end of a sentence:

The film was beautifully photographed, superbly acted, expertly directed—and excruciatingly boring.

2. To clearly set off a long clause or phrase that adds information to the main clause:

“Little Nicky”—Adam Sandler’s one big mistake—was a box-office bomb.

Remember that excessive use robs the dash of its power.

data and other foreign plurals Many English words have their roots in Latin; some are derived from Greek. Some of these words conform to singular–plural rules unlike our own. *Data*, *media* and *alumni* are common Latin plurals. Magazines are one *medium*; radio and TV are broadcast *media*. The word *alumni* presents its own complications: A group of men and women who have graduated from a school are *alumni*; one male graduate is an *alumnus*; one female grad is an *alumna*. And to be perfectly correct, a group of female grads would be *alumnae*. The Greek words *criteria* and *phenomena* are plural. Their singulars are *criterion* and *phenomenon*.

Data can be a confusing word. It's plural but is most often considered a unit—a collective noun—and should take a singular verb:

Your data is invalid.
(unit)

If the sense of *data* is individual items, however, use a plural verb:

The data were collected from seven tracking sites.
(individual items)

DE-DI

dependent clause Although it contains both a predicate and a subject, a *dependent clause* does not express a complete thought and cannot stand alone as a sentence. Dependent clauses rely on main clauses for their completion:

Because the tax levy failed
(dep. clause)

Because the tax levy failed, the library will cut its hours.
(dep. clause linked to indep. clause)

Recognizing dependent clauses will help you (1) avoid fragments (treating dependent clauses as if they were complete sentences) and (2) vary sentence structure. Place the dependent clause in front, in the middle or at the end of the main clause to vary sentence structure. See p. 149.

different from/different than For those who take comfort from edicts, here's one: Use *different from* and you will never be wrong. If this leaves you wondering why *different than* exists, join the ranks of contentious grammarians who have been arguing this point for years. Unless you're interested in delving into the nether regions of structural linguistics or semantic compatibility, consider using *different than* only when it introduces a *condensed clause* (a clause that omits certain words without loss of clarity).

Open-meeting laws are different in Illinois than [they are] in Oregon.
(condensed clause)

In general, however, play it safe with *different from*. So the previous example would read:

Open-meeting laws in Oregon are different from those in Illinois.

differ from/differ with Politicians who *differ from* (are unlike) others may not necessarily *differ with* (disagree with) each other. Although these phrases express contrast, they are not interchangeable. When you mean two items are dissimilar, use *differ from*. When you mean items are in conflict, use *differ with*:

The competing proposals did not significantly differ from one another.

The developers differed with the zoning committee.

discreet/discrete Yes, it's true—both of these words are adjectives, and both are pronounced the same. But they do have discrete meanings! *Discreet* means “prudent or careful,” especially about keeping confidences, as in this sentence:

The therapist was less than helpful, but at least he was discreet.

Discrete means “distinct or separate,” as in this sentence:

The two words have discrete meanings.

disinterested/uninterested A *disinterested* (impartial) observer may be *uninterested* (lack interest) in the situation, but the words are not synonymous.

drug A *drug* is any substance used as medicine in the treatment of a disease. Headline writers have made this word synonymous with *narcotics*, a particular group of sense-dulling, usually addictive drugs. All narcotics are drugs; all drugs are not narcotics. Be precise when using these words. To avoid confusion (and the possibility of libel), use *medicine* when referring to a substance used to treat a disease or an injury.

each/either/neither When used as subjects, these three pronouns always take singular verbs:

Each is responsible for his or her own equipment.

Neither of the defendants was found guilty.

When these words are used as adjectives, the nouns they modify always take a singular verb:

Either answer is correct.

Neither candidate speaks to the issues.

either . . . or/neither . . . nor Called *correlative conjunctions*, these word pairs (along with *both . . . and*, *not so . . . as* and *not only . . . but also*) connect similar grammatical elements in parallel form:

He can either pay the back taxes or risk a jail sentence.

Correlative conjunctions also pose agreement problems. When a compound subject is linked by a correlative conjunction, the subject closest to the verb determines the number of the verb:

Neither the researcher nor her assistants were available for comment.

EI-EN

When the subject closest to the verb is singular, you must use a singular verb. The construction is grammatical but sometimes graceless:

Neither the assistants nor the researcher was available for comment.

Avoid awkwardness by placing the plural subject next to the verb. See p. 75.

elicit/illicit These two words may sound alike, but the similarity stops there. *Elicit*, a verb, means “to bring out or draw forth.” *Illicit*, an adjective, means “illegal or unlawful.”

His illicit behavior elicited strong community reaction.

eminent/imminent These are both adjectives, but they describe very different qualities. *Eminent* means “distinguished or prominent”:

The eminent scientist Linus Pauling won two Noble Prizes.

Imminent means “about to occur” or “impending”:

The Internet company is facing an imminent takeover.

Note that there is one *m* in *eminent* and two in *imminent*. Don’t ask us why!

enormity/enormousness These words are not synonymous. *Enormity* means “wickedness.” *Enormousness* refers to size.

The enormity of the September 11 attacks is still difficult to comprehend.

The enormousness of the budget deficit has staggered even the most nimble politicians.

everyone/everybody These collective pronouns are troublesome because they imply the plural—*everyone* and *everybody* means *many* people—but, grammatically, they take the singular.

Everyone should remain in his or her seat.

Because this correct construction seems to defy logic, it is common to see and hear the incorrect plural—everyone should remain in *their* seats. Don't make that mistake! Also, in keeping this construction in the singular, remember fairness and accuracy. If all people included in *everyone* are male, then it is fine to write: *Everyone* should remain in *his* seat. If the group is mixed, gender inclusivity needs to be reflected in the pronoun choice. If you think *his or her* is awkward, you can always rewrite, as in:

All theater-goers should remain in their seats.

exclamation mark Expressing strong emotion or surprise, the exclamation mark (!) is rarely used in journalistic writing. Its use is almost always limited to direct quotations. Remember to place the exclamation mark inside the quotation marks:

“I'll kill you when this is over!” the witness screamed at the prosecutor.

farther/further One of these years, you probably won't have to worry about this bothersome duo. *Farther*, say grammarians, is on the way out. But language often changes slowly, and the distinction between these two words will be with us for a while. Use *farther* to express physical distance; use *further* when referring to “degree, time or quantity”:

The planning commission wants to extend the boundaries farther south.

The planning commission will discuss the boundary issue further.

feel Save this overused word to refer to the tactile or emotional; do not use it as a synonym for *think* or *believe*.

fewer/less This is a much-abused pair, but the distinctions are simple: When you refer to a number of individual items, *fewer* is your choice;

when you refer to a bulk, amount, sum, period of time or concept, use *less*:

Fewer doctors result in less medical care.

At Data Corporation fewer than 10 employees make less than \$50,000 per year.

In the latter example, we are not talking about individual dollars but a sum (amount) of money.

flaunt/flout Whether you *flaunt* or *flout*, you are overtly acting up with these verbs. Care to “outrageously or pretentiously display”? You *flaunt*. But when you “scorn rules and laws”—you *flout*.

The lottery winner flaunted his new gold Cadillac on the streets of New York City.

The old retired farmer flouted the law that banned domestic livestock within city limits.

fragments An unfinished piece of a sentence, a *fragment* may be a single word, a phrase or a dependent clause. It may lack a subject, a predicate, a complete thought or any combination of the three. Whatever form it takes, whatever element it lacks, a fragment is not a grammatical sentence and should not stand alone. Fragments can be rewritten to include subject, predicate and complete thought; incorporated into complete sentences; or attached to main clauses. See p. 52 and the *sentence* entry.

Now you know the rule. Here’s the loophole: Fragments, when used purposefully by skillful writers, constitute a stylistic technique. With their clipped, punchy beat, fragments can create excitement and grab reader attention. But this stylistic device must be appropriate to both subject and medium and should be used sparingly.

gender-specific references (*he/she*) Language reflects culture and beliefs. When a society changes, we believe language ought to keep pace. We are speaking not of faddish words or slang expressions but of the way language treats people. The language in the following sentences is no longer an accurate reflection of our society:

A nurse ought to be attentive to her patients.

A state legislator has a responsibility to his constituents.

In these sentences we see outdated gender stereotypes—nurses are all female, legislators are all male. From a grammatical point of view, the problem is choosing a referent (*she, he, him, her, his, hers*) that reflects reality rather than presuming maleness or femaleness of a neuter noun. Because the singular neuter pronoun (*it, its*) cannot refer to a person, we have two grammatical options if we want to avoid gender stereotyping:

1. Use both the masculine and the feminine pronoun when referencing a noun that could refer to either sex:

A nurse ought to be attentive to his or her patients.

2. Change the neuter noun to the plural and use plural neuter pronouns (*they, them, their*):

State legislators have a responsibility to their constituents.

In your effort to treat both sexes fairly in language, don't fall prey to easy (and incorrect) solutions that accept errors in agreement:

Everybody deserves to make it on their own.

This may be well-intentioned, but it is grammatically incorrect. Two solutions are obvious:

Everybody deserves to make it on his or her own.

All people deserve to make it on their own.

good/well If you understand the role of linking verbs and adverbs, then you will always understand when to use the adjective *good* and the adverb *well*. A linking verb establishes a relationship between the subject and a modifier. When the subject of the sentence is linked to “positive” or “desirable” traits, then use the modifier *good*:

The sound quality of the small desktop stereo is surprisingly good.

When you mean to say the action of the sentence, the verb, is executed “properly,” “skillfully,” or “sufficiently,” then use *well*:

The old dog performed his new tricks well.
(performed *how*?)

There's no sense in saying the sound of the stereo is *well*, unless you mean to say it is in good health—which you likely don't. Stick to *good* for relating to subjects and *well* for verbs. Another example:

The doctors said she was doing well after the surgery.
(doing *how*?)

hanged/hung The verb *hang* is conjugated differently depending on the object of the hanging. The conjugation *hang, hung, hung* refers to objects:

The portrait hung in the museum foyer.

The conjugation *hang, hanged, hanged* refers to people (executions or suicides):

He hanged himself in his prison cell.

historic/historical These are both adjectives and both deal with history, but their difference is significant. When something is *historic*, it has important significance to history, as in

The Rev. Martin Luther King's "I have a dream" address in 1963 is considered an historic speech.

Historical is a more general reference, connected to anything that is related to history, as in

She has made a fortune writing historical novels.

homophones, homonyms and homographs If you're looking for more reasons to love the English language—or lose patience with it—look no further. *Homophones* are words that sound the same but are spelled differently and have unrelated meanings, like *fair* and *fare*, *alter* and *altar*, and *whose* and *who's*. If your vocabulary comes from spoken English (TV, for example) rather than written English (books), these words can mess you up. Spell-checkers won't help, as the incorrectly used words are, in fact, spelled correctly. Read! *Homonyms* are words that sound the same, are spelled the same but—oddly—have completely different meanings, as in *stable* (horse stall) and *stable* (unwavering). As if this were not enough, *homographs* are spelled the same but—maddeningly—are pronounced differently (and have different meanings), as in *bow* (in archery) and *bow* (of a ship).

hopefully Possibly the single most abused word in our language, *hopefully* means “with hope.” It describes how a subject feels (*hopeful*). Therefore, this sentence would be correct:

She opened the mailbox hopefully, looking for the check.

Hopefully—regardless of what you may hear or read—does not mean “it is hoped that.” Therefore, the following sentence is *incorrect*:

Hopefully, the check will arrive.

The check is not “hopeful.” *Hopefully* does not describe anything in the preceding sentence. It is, in fact, a dangling modifier. People have so thoroughly abused *hopefully* in conversational language (making it synonymous with “it is hoped”) that the abuse is now part of our written language. For correctness, precision and clarity, respect the real meaning of the word. If you mean “it is hoped,” write that.

HO-HY

hyphen Whereas the dash creates a dramatic break in a sentence, the workhorse *hyphen* creates a typographical bridge that links words for several purposes.

1. It joins compound modifiers unless one of the modifiers is *very* or an *-ly* adverb (compound modifiers are two or more adjectives or adverbs that do not separately describe the word they modify):

a well-educated soldier
(hyphen needed)

the newly appointed ambassador
(*-ly* adverb, no hyphen needed)

2. It links certain prefixes to the words that follow. One basic guideline: If the prefix ends in a vowel and the next word begins with the same vowel, hyphenate (except *cooperate* and *coordinate*). It’s best to check a dictionary or stylebook on this rule because exceptions abound. Some examples:

the pre-election suspense

but:

a precursor of the election results

3. It links words when a preposition is omitted:

score of 10-1

(preposition *to* omitted)

closed June-August

(preposition *through* omitted)

See p. 117.

-ics words Words ending with the suffix *-ics* (*athletics, politics, graphics, acoustics, economics*) can create problems with agreement. Although their final *s* makes these words *look* plural, they can be either singular or plural depending on meaning. If the word refers to “a science, art or general field of study,” it is treated as singular and takes a singular verb. If the word refers to “the act, practices or activities” of the field, it takes a plural verb:

Politics is an impossible career.

(the field of politics, singular)

His politics seem to change every year.

(the practice of politics, plural)

Some *-ics* words do not carry both meanings. *Hysterics*, for example, always takes the plural because it always refers to “acts and practices.”

if I were English uses the subjunctive mood to express a nonexistent, hypothetical or improbable condition. That “mood” calls for what itself seems grammatically incorrect—a plural verb with a singular subject. But this sentence is grammatically correct:

If I were the world’s richest person, all medical care would be free.

If you want to express a condition that is possible, however, it would be correct to say:

If I was president of this company, these accounting scandals would cease.

if/whether These conjunctions are not interchangeable. *If* means “in the event that,” “granting that” or “on the condition that.” It is often used to introduce a *subjunctive clause* (a clause that expresses a nonexistent, hypothetical or improbable condition):

If the team wins tonight, the coach will cut off all his hair in celebration.

(in the event that)

If the volcano were to erupt again, thousands of lives would be threatened.

(hypothetical condition)

Whether means “if it is so that,” “if it happens that” or “in case.” It is generally used to introduce a possibility:

He wondered whether he should attend the briefing.

(if it is so)

Whether he wins or loses, this will be his last campaign.

(introduces possibilities)

For the sake of precision and conciseness, use *whether*, not *whether or not*. The *or not* is implied:

Whether the schools will remain open depends on the fate of the budget levy.

impact This noun means a “collision” or a “violent or forceful striking together.” Unfortunately, writers use *impact* when they really mean something much less forceful, such as *effect* or *influence*.

When her car hit the guardrail, the impact threw her from the vehicle.

(correct)

We can't predict what impact this report will have on future negotiations.

(misuse—better to use *effect* or *influence*)

Unfortunately, *impact* has also fallen prey to those who toss it around as a verb (“The televised debates *impacted* the election”) or an adjective (“federally *impacted* areas”). The only thing that can be impacted is a tooth, and that's unpleasant enough.

imply/infer Misused far too often, these verbs are not interchangeable. *Imply* means “to suggest or hint.” *Infer* means “to deduce or conclude from facts or evidence.”

When she implied that Smith was unethical, the search committee inferred that she had an ax to grind.

indefinite pronouns Because indefinite pronouns (*anyone, everyone, few, some, and so on*) don't always specify a number, they can cause agreement problems. Here are a few rules to follow:

- When used as subjects, *each, either, anyone, everyone, much, no one, nothing* and *someone* always take a singular verb.
- Acting as subjects, *both, few, many* and *several* always take a plural verb.
- Pronouns such as *any, none* and *some* take singular verbs when they refer to a unit or general quantity. If they refer to amount or individuals, they take a plural verb:

Some of the shipment was delayed
(general quantity)

because some of the workers were on strike.
(individuals)

See p. 33.

independent clause An independent clause contains a subject, a predicate and a complete thought.

This is an independent clause:

Students complained to the professor.

This is not:

that she didn't give them enough time to finish the exam.
(this is a dependent, or subordinate, clause)

See p. 49.

-ing endings A common suffix, *-ing* is added to a verb to create the present progressive form (“She is *running* for office.”) or a verbal (“*Running* for office requires tenacity.”). It can also be added to a noun, creating a verbal (a gerund) that gives the noun a sense of action. For example, *parenting* is the action of being a *parent*. Although “ing” a noun may occasionally create new words with distinct meanings, it can also be unnecessarily trendy. Language should change in response to culture and not merely for the sake of change. Consider this example:

The boss believes in gifting her staff during the holidays.

This is an ugly, awkward construction. Use new *-ing* words sparingly and only when they capture a unique meaning without damaging the rhythm and sound of the language. See also the *-ize* entry.

in/into These prepositions are not interchangeable. *In* denotes location or position. *Into* indicates motion.

The photographer was already in the courtroom when the star
(location, position)

witness was ushered into it.
(movement)

Regardless of current slang, *into* should never be used as a substitute for “involved with” or “interested in.” This colloquial use is not only sloppy but also weak and ambiguous:

For the past year, she’s been into swimming.
(ambiguous slang)

She’s been swimming a mile a day for the past year.
(improved)

initiate/instigate At our own *instigation*, we have *initiated* an investigation of this troublesome pair. When you mean that a deluded artist began or originated a contest, for example, it is *not* correct to write this:

He instigated the first tofu sculpture contest.

Instead, he *initiated* (began) it. This would be a proper use of *instigate*:

She instigated the recall movement in the school district.

In this case she did not begin the movement—she pressed for it.

insure/ensure/assure Please be *assured*: These words are different! If you limit the meaning of *insure* to activities of insurance companies, you’ll always be correct.

Tom wants to insure his house for earthquake and flood damage.

Ensure, on the other hand, means (in a noninsurance sense) “to guarantee” or “to provide something”:

She promised to ensure the safety of the reporters.

What about *assure*? Used correctly, this verb speaks directly to a person, to give him or her confidence in a promise:

She assured them that their insurance coverage was adequate.

invoke/evoke Probably because both words contain *-voke* from the Latin root *vocare* (to call), these very different words are often used interchangeably. *Invoke* means “to appeal to or call forth earnestly.” *Evoke* means “to produce or elicit” (a reaction, a response) or “to reawaken” (memories, for example):

When the speaker invoked God, he evoked a strong reaction from the audience of atheists.

irregardless Strike this silly word from your vocabulary! *Regardless*, which means “without regard for” or “unmindful of” is what you’re after. The *-less* suffix creates the negative meaning. When you mistakenly add the *ir-* prefix, you create a double negative.

IN-IZ

its/it’s This odd couple creates more grammatical scandal than any other word pair. Okay, once and for all: *Its* is the possessive form of the neuter pronoun *it*. Do not confuse this with *it’s*, which is a contraction for *it is* or *it has*:

The committee reached its decision yesterday.
(neuter possessive)

“It’s going to be a close vote,” said Mayor Smith.
(contraction of *it is*)

By the way, please use *it* or *its*—not *she* or *her*—when referring to nations or ships:

Somalia is reviewing its paltry military options.

The cruise ship *SpongeBob SquarePants* sails for its home port at Disney World this afternoon.

See p. 33.

-ize words An occasionally useful suffix, *-ize* has been employed since the time of the ancient Greeks to change nouns into verbs (*final/finalize*, *burglar/burglarize*). But the “-ization” of words has now reached epidemic proportions. We’ve been alarmed at the growing use of “incentivize,” for

example. Writers interested in the clarity, precision and beauty of language need to take precautions. Tacking *-ize* onto nouns often creates useless, awkward and stodgy words. Will it get worse? Will we soon read:

The president announced a plan to soldierize the U.S. Postal Service.

The agency may permanentize its position by routinizing its appointment procedures.

“Verbizing” nouns is dangerous business. The result is often tongue-twisting, bureaucratic-sounding clutter. Before you use an *-ize* word, check your dictionary. Make sure the word has a unique meaning, and pay attention to its sound.

kind of/sort of Conversationally we use *kind of* and *sort of* to mean “rather” or “somewhat”:

It’s kind of [somewhat] cloudy today.

I’m sort of [rather] tired.

But casual usage and clear, precise written language are two different things. So please restrict your use of *kind of* and *sort of* to mean “a species or subcategory of,” as in:

Tom is the kind of executive who accepts no excuses.

In many cases you can eliminate the problems posed by *kind of* and *sort of* by avoiding the words themselves:

Tom is an executive who accepts no excuses.

lay/lie *Lay*, as transitive verb form, *always* takes a direct object; *lie*, an intransitive verb, *never* takes a direct object:

The sheriff laid the smoking gun on the bar.
(dir. obj.)

The Seychelles lie in the Indian Ocean.
(prep. phrase)

Be careful not to confuse *lie* and *lay* in the past tense. The past tense of *lie* is *lay*:

He finally lay down for a long winter’s nap.

See p. 25.

lend/loan In spoken language the distinction between these two is almost nonexistent. But rather than worry about the differing niceties observed by various editors, play it safe: Use *lend* as a verb and *loan* as a noun. The one exception currently favored by most experts is *loan* as a verb in financial contexts:

The bank loaned the troubled firm \$45 million.

This would be an appropriate use of *lend*:

Please don't lend him your car for the weekend; you'll be sorry!

less than/under Do not use *under* unless you mean “physically beneath.” If you mean “a lesser quantity or amount,” use *less than*:

The county budget is less than \$80 million.

The stolen money was found under the bridge.

LE-LI

Also see entries for *fewer/less* and *more than/over*.

linking verbs A *linking verb* connects a subject to an equivalent or related word in the sentence. That word—a predicate noun, a predicate pronoun or a predicate adjective—refers to the subject by either restating it or describing it. The principal linking verbs are *be*, *seem*, *become*, *appear*, *feel* and *look*.

She is a best-selling novelist.

(*Novelist*, a predicate noun, restates subject *she*.)

It is he.

(*He*, a predicate pronoun, restates the subject *it* and stays in the nominative case.)

He feels bad.

(*Bad*, a predicate adjective, describes the subject *he*.)

Note that *badly*, an adverb, cannot be used in this construction. See the entry for *bad/badly*.

literal/figurative Considering these two words have opposite meanings, it's amazing that writers will substitute one for another. *Literal* means “word for word” or “upholding the exact meaning of a word”:

This is a literal translation of the Celtic myth.

Figurative, on the other hand, means “not literal; metaphorical, based on figures of speech”:

Figuratively speaking, she’s on top of the world.

loath/loathe An errant vowel is all that stands between you and the adjective *loath* when you intend the verb *loathe*. *Loath* means “unwilling” or “disinclined.”

I am loath to join you on a 100-mile hike.

But *loathe* with an “e” at the end is a verb that means “to dislike greatly.”

Newborn babies loathe the sensation of air on their tender skin.

loose/lose This is a mistake that is rising quickly through the ranks of misuse. *Loose* generally is an adjective denoting “unrestrained, unfixed or unbound.” *Lose* is a verb meaning “fail to keep.”

LO-ME

The manager maintained a loose set of rules for the boarding house.

The patient ignored his doctor’s recommendation to lose fifty pounds.

may/might Time to split the proverbial hairs! Both of these verbs indicate possibility, as in “I *may* go to Sara’s party tonight,” but some usage experts contend that *may* indicates a stronger possibility than *might*. So what to do? Our advice is to stick with *may* unless the possibilities for action are extremely remote:

I might as well be the man in the moon.

median/average (mean) *Median* is the middle value in a distribution of items, the point at which half of the items are above and half are below. *Average* is the sum of a group of items divided by the number of items in the group. *Mean* is statisticians’ talk for average. Statistically, *average* and *mean* are virtually synonymous.

Number of years spent on death row by prisoners of state X:

Prisoner A 18	Prisoner D 10	Prisoner G 6
Prisoner B 14	Prisoner E 7	Prisoner H 6
Prisoner C 10	Prisoner F 6	Prisoner I 4

The *median* years spent on death row is 7; that is, half of the prisoners spent more than 7 years in jail, half spent 7 or less. The *average* (or *mean*) number of years spent on death row is 9; it is the sum of all the years (81) divided by the number of prisoners (9).

more than/over Like *less than* and *under*, these words are not interchangeable. Do not use *over* unless you are referring to a spatial relationship. For figures and amounts, the correct phrase is *more than*:

More than 100 jets flew bombing and support missions over the desert.

none This indefinite pronoun often causes agreement problems. Use a singular verb when *none* means “no one or not one.” When *none* means “no two, no amount or no number,” use a plural verb. Don’t be fooled by a plural prepositional phrase—*none* is the subject:

None of the suspected rioters was arrested.
(not one rioter)

None of the taxes were paid.
(no taxes—no amount)

See the entry for *indefinite pronouns*.

numerals Many media organizations have specific style rules concerning numerals. Check first. In the absence of other guidelines, follow these rules:

1. Spell out whole numbers below 10: three, seven.
2. Use figures for 10 and above: 14, 305.
3. Spell out fractions less than one: two-thirds, three-quarters.
4. Spell out *first* through *ninth* when they indicate a sequence: She was first in line; the Ninth Amendment. Use figures for 10th and above.
5. Spell out numerals at the beginning of a sentence. The only exception is a calendar-year date.

There are also many guidelines for ages, percentages, fractions, election returns, monetary units, dimensions, temperatures and other specific cases. “The Associated Press Stylebook” is a good, comprehensive reference.

occur/take place Contemporary usage favors this distinction: *Occur* refers to “all accidental or unscheduled events”; *take place* refers to “a planned event”:

The power outages occurred within an hour of each other.

Dedication of the statue will take place at 2 p.m.

off of Be wary of prepositions that enjoy one another’s company. You may be practicing grammatical “featherbedding”—having two do the job of one. *Off of* is one of those redundant, bulky constructions. *Off*, all by its lonesome, suffices.

Get off [of] my back!

Driscoll walked off [of] the stage and never performed again.

one of the/the only one of the Having a verb agree in number with its subject is not difficult—once you identify the proper subject. When the subject is a pronoun (*who* or *that*, for example) and it refers to a noun elsewhere in the sentence, the task is somewhat challenging. Subject–verb agreement then depends on determining the correct antecedent. For *one of the/the only one of the*, follow these rules:

OC-ON

1. In *one of the* constructions, the relative pronoun refers to the object of the preposition of the main clause, not the subject:

Easter is one of the best ballplayers who have played the game
(subj.) (obj. of prep.) (pron.) (verb)
in the last 50 years.

(If you examine this sentence, you will see that *Easter* is not the only ballplayer who has played the game in 50 years. We are talking about *many players who have played the game in that period.*)

2. In *the only one of the* constructions, the relative pronoun refers to the subject of the main clause:

Mayor Drinkwater is the only one of the candidates who
(subj.) (pron.)
has opposed the tax referendum.
(verb)

(There were no other candidates who opposed this referendum. The antecedent clearly is *Drinkwater.*)

parallel structure When you place like ideas in consistent grammatical patterns, you create *parallel structure*. This consistency among elements gives order to writing and helps make the message clear. Parallelism also creates balance, symmetry and sometimes rhythm in a sentence. Common errors in parallelism include mixing elements in a series, mixing verbals and switching voice. See p. 79.

paraphrase This is a form of editing—a correct and concise summary of a direct quotation that may be too long or semantically awkward to use. Accuracy is the key here.

According to Mayor Johnson, the proposed zoning change will block the city’s plan to develop more low-income housing.

Be sure that is what the mayor said—and meant.

parentheses Writers should use parentheses sparingly because the reason for their use—to provide additional information or an aside for the sentence—is generally contrary to brief, crisp writing. For those rare occasions when you do use them, here is a simple rule concerning punctuation: Put the period *inside* the parentheses only if the parenthetical material is a complete sentence and can stand independently of the preceding sentence:

Tom is not the accountant who was indicted in the dot-com scandal. (It was his partner Sam, who goes to trial next month.)

If these conditions are not met, the period goes outside:

The mourners chanted, “Vaya con Dios” (Go with God).

See p. 121.

passive voice This is an odd, generally ineffective and occasionally deceptive construction in which the subject of the sentence is actually the recipient of the verb’s action. It adds words while diminishing clarity. Doesn’t seem like a good idea, eh? Note the difference in directness and conciseness between these two examples:

The accounting scandal dubbed “Restatementgate” by journalists and commentators will be investigated by the Senate subcommittee.
(passive, in two constructions)

The Senate subcommittee will investigate the “Restatementgate” accounting scandal.
(active)

There are, however, suitable occasions for passive voice. See Chapter 5.

people/persons Some editors contend that a “group” should be referred to as *people*, but “individuals” should be called *persons*. So, what is the scale of acceptable use for *persons* (three? six?)? Put another way, when does a particular number of *persons* become *people*? We suggest you save yourself the headache! There are more pressing decisions in life. So if you are referring to “one individual,” you are referring to a *person*:

She’s a wonderful person, don’t you think?

If you are referring to “more than one,” use *people*:

Twelve people were arrested this morning in the jaywalking sting operation.

possessives Chapter 7 discusses the formation of possessives. This point, however, deserves emphasis: Possessives of personal pronouns are not the same as subject–verb contractions. Remember that the personal pronoun possessives (*my, mine, our, ours, your, yours, his, her, hers, its, their, theirs*) do *not* require an apostrophe. See also the entry for *its/it’s*.

PE-PR

poor/pore/pour Consider it *poor* judgment to substitute the verbs *pore* or *pour* for the adjective with the same pronunciation. *Poor* means “lacking,” whether it’s health or wealth. But you *pour* a glass of juice in the morning before you *pore*, or “study attentively,” over your grammar text.

precede/proceed These two verbs differentiate between looking back and moving forward. *Precede* means “to come or exist before.”

The 9.0 magnitude earthquake preceded the tsunami.

Proceed means “to go forward” or “carry on an action” (especially after an interruption).

Warned about snow storms, the climber proceeded to hike the mountain anyway.

predicate The *simple predicate* of a sentence is the verb. The *complete predicate* includes the verb plus all its complements and modifiers.

I read “When Words Collide.”
(simple pred.)

I read “When Words Collide” with great enthusiasm and a growing appreciation for the power of language.
(complete pred.)

predicate adjective/predicate nominative A *predicate adjective* and a *predicate nominative* follow linking verbs. The *predicate adjective* modifies the subject, and the *predicate nominative* defines or restates the subject in different terms. Remember that a predicate nominative can be either a noun or a pronoun.

The dress rehearsal of the song sounded weak.
(subject) (predicate adjective)

The two large dogs were delightful charmers.
(subject) (predicate nominative)

PR

preposition This is a handy part of speech that links phrases and neatly ties a sentence into a coherent package:

The burglar was hiding behind the freezer.
(The preposition *behind* begins the prepositional phrase.)

Although a preposition can occasionally introduce a clause, it almost always precedes a phrase. When that phrase contains a pronoun, that pronoun must stay in the objective case:

Don’t lay the blame on us reporters for this spate of bad news.

Avoid burdening a sentence with an unnecessary series of prepositions:

Dr. Flagranto followed his victim through the French doors next to the solarium, with the evil intent of murder on his mind.

Let prepositions enhance a sentence—don’t let them drain the power of the verb!

preventive/preventative Why in the world use *preventative*? It uses two extra letters and still means preventive! It’s pretentious, that’s why. Practice preventive language arts—avoid overweight, unnecessary words.

principal/principle As a noun, *principal* is “someone who is first in rank or authority,” such as the principal of a school. As an adjective, *principal* still means “first in rank or authority,” such as the “*principal* reason for the levy’s defeat.” *Principle*, however, is only a noun. It means “a truth, doctrine or rule of conduct,” such as “an uncompromising *principle* of honesty.”

prior to What’s the matter with using *before*? *Prior to* is stuffy and falsely formal.

pronoun It means, literally, “in place of a noun.” Unlike nouns, pronouns change their form in the possessive (for example, *their* for *they*), which is why pronoun possessives don’t need apostrophes (and that’s why the subject–verb contraction *it’s* is *not* a pronoun!). Careless writers often position their pronouns indiscriminately, causing problems with antecedent identification:

Pentagon briefers tried to explain the field reports to the journalists, but it was apparent that they were hopelessly confused.

PR

See the problem? Be sure that antecedents are clearly identified.
See p. 78.

proved/proven Use *proved* as the past participle of the verb *prove*:

The district attorney has proved, beyond a reasonable doubt, the guilt of the defendant.

Proven, although cited by some dictionaries as an acceptable alternate for the past participle, is preferred in journalistic style as an adjective only:

The district attorney has a proven track record for convictions.

In a linking-verb construction, use *proven* if it takes the role of the predicate adjective:

The district attorney’s success is proven.
(*Proven* is not part of the verb. It is an adjective that modifies *success*.)

quotation marks A common question about *quotation marks* is where to place other marks of punctuation with them. Here is a brief recap:

1. Periods and commas always go inside the quotation marks.
2. Question marks and exclamation marks go inside *if* they are part of the quoted material.

The most common error in quotation mark punctuation is in placement of the question mark. Two examples show its correct placement:

The senator asked the company president: “Can you honestly tell me that your baby food formula has never caused the death of a child in a Third World country?”

(The question mark belongs inside because it is part of a quoted question.)

What did you think of “An Inconvenient Truth”?

(The entire sentence is a question; the quoted movie title is declarative.)

See Chapter 8.

QU-RE

quotation/quote *Quotation* is a noun. *Quote* is supposed to be a verb. In newsrooms, however, *quote* is often used as a noun. (“Get me some good quotes for this piece. It’s dying of boredom.”) Journalists are economical souls. In general, remember to *quote* only the good *quotations!*

real/really We’re *really* serious about these differences—they are *real*. Please remember: *Real* is an adjective, and it modifies nouns; and in the case of the linking-verb construction previously, it can modify a pronoun. *Really* is an adverb; it modifies adjectives. So, just to be clear: It would be *really* bad writing to say that you write “*real* well.” Got it?

rebut/refute It’s easier to *rebut* a statement than to *refute* it. When you *rebut* a statement, you contradict it or deny it. But that doesn’t mean you have conclusively proved the truth of your position. When you *refute* a statement, you have proved that you are correct. Use *refute* in your news writing only if there is a consensus that the denial has been successful. Don’t make the judgment on your own.

reluctant/reticent Don't be sheepish about enforcing this distinction. People who are *reluctant* to do something are not necessarily *reticent*. A *reluctant* person is unwilling to do something:

For reasons she would not disclose, Thomason was reluctant to declare her candidacy for the city council.

If a person is unwilling to speak readily or is uncommonly reserved, we generally describe that individual as *reticent*:

The professor has instituted a class for reticent speakers.

renown/renowned Often confused, these two words are different parts of speech. *Renown*, a noun, means “fame or eminence”; *renowned*, an adjective, means “famous or celebrated”:

She is a motivational speaker of great renown.
(noun—obj. of prep.)

Nobel laureate Linus Pauling was renowned for his groundbreaking work in chemistry.
(pred. adj.)

RE

restrictive/nonrestrictive A *restrictive clause* is an essential clause that helps control the meaning of a sentence. Understanding this helps you in at least two ways:

1. The restrictive clause does not need to be set off by commas.
2. In a choice between *that* and *which*, *that* is always the correct pronoun subject or object for the restrictive clause.

A campfire that got out of control in the Gifford Pinchot National Forest two days ago is now threatening two nearby towns.

A *nonrestrictive clause*, however, is not essential to the full meaning of a sentence. This clause *must* be set off by commas, and you use *which* instead of *that* when the choice has to be made:

The Gifford Pinchot fire, which thus far has consumed 800 acres of old-growth timber, may be brought under control by this weekend, according to USDA Forest Service officials.

See also the entry for *that/which/who*.

run-on sentence Like the tedious infomercial, it doesn't know when to stop. The run-on may actually be a jumble of sentences because of improper punctuation:

Picket lines went up for a fourth straight day, nurses vowed to continue to honor them until contract talks resume.

Use a semicolon instead of a comma or insert the conjunction *and* after the comma to correct this fault. See also the entry for *comma splice* and p. 54.

said Don't overlook the obvious when quoting someone in your writing. Searching for variety in reporting how someone said something, writers sometimes grasp at *stated*, *uttered*, *elucidated*, *declared* or what have you. Describing the speaker and his or her delivery is more important than poring over a thesaurus to find a verb that is better off in a game of Scrabble than in your writing.

semicolon This punctuation mark helps you avoid the run-on sentence. When two independent clauses are in one sentence and are not separated by a conjunction such as *or*, *but* or *and*, they must be separated by a semicolon:

This is not your ordinary, barn-twirling tornado; it is the perfect storm.

When two independent clauses are joined by a conjunctive adverb such as *however*, *nevertheless* or *therefore*, a semicolon also is needed before that adverb:

I cannot support this committee's recommendation; however, I plan to abstain rather than cast a negative vote.

sentence A *sentence* is one or more independent clauses that present a complete thought. Sorry to say, writers do awful things to sentences: They make one run into another, they clutter them with unnecessary punctuation, and sometimes they neglect to put a verb in one but still call it a sentence:

Such as this fragment.

A good sentence is an enlightenment, a forceful directive, an amusing bit of play. But it is always well-contained; its thought is always complete. See Chapter 5.

set/sit Normally the verb *set* requires an object:

Please set the package on the table.

Sit, however, *never* takes an object:

Would you like to sit down?

since/because These words are not synonymous. *Since* is properly used when it denotes a period of time, whether continuous or broken:

How long has it been since you've had an old-fashioned lemon phosphate?

Because gives a reason or cause:

I refuse to sign this petition because it would limit our First Amendment freedoms.

Note that in most circumstances a comma is not needed before *because*.

split constructions The split infinitive is always a handy target for grammarians. However, the chief reason for objecting to the split infinitive—loss of clarity—is also the reason for avoiding unnecessary splits of a subject and a verb and of a verb and its complement. Some examples:

The Secretary of Defense has agreed to before the start of the next Congressional session reveal the nature of troop buildups in the Gulf region.

(Insertion of two prepositional phrases between the two parts of the infinitive is both awkward and sloppy.)

Smithfield, before switching to the Praktika line of single-lens reflex photo equipment and commercially endorsing it at great profit to himself, used “plate cameras” early in his career.

(A split between subject and verb—although not unusual—can be awkward when a lengthy split causes the reader to lose track of the thought.)

The prime minister has reportedly rejected, in a secret meeting with European Union diplomats held just yesterday morning, the most recent European trade agreement with several Balkan states.

(A split between the verb and its complement disturbs the natural flow by injecting lengthy explanatory material.)

than/then *Then*—an adverb denoting time—is often confused with *than*. If you are comparing something, use *than*:

No one is more aware of America’s breakfast habits than our fast-food franchise executives.

Then, on the other hand, carries the sense of “soon afterward”:

Let’s visit our favorite café and have caramel lattes; then we can head to the gym to suffer at the hands of our aerobics instructor.

(Note that *then* cannot connect these two independent clauses on its own. A semicolon is needed.)

When *than* is used to introduce an implied clause of comparison, the pronoun that may follow is most likely in the nominative case:

Tom is a lot smarter than I [am smart].

But some sentences won’t permit this implied arrangement:

There is not a more dedicated volunteer than her.
 (“Than she is a volunteer” would not make sense here.)

TH

that/which/who As the entry for *restrictive/nonrestrictive* says, *that* is used to restrict meaning and *which* is used to elaborate on it. These pronouns are used only in their particular types of clauses, but *who* can be used in both types when it refers to people or to things endowed by the writer with human qualities:

My recipes that require soy products are all filed next to the microwave oven.
 (Restrictive—comma not needed)

Construction bonds, which can be a dependable tax shelter, carry different interest rates according to the credit standing of the local government.
 (Nonrestrictive—gives explanation, and a comma is required.)

The demonstrators who interrupted the senator’s speech were arrested.
 (Restrictive—in this case, *who* is preferred over *that* because we are talking about real people, not inanimate objects or concepts. Again, a comma is not required.)

Newland, who is running for the state Senate seat from Medford, charged this morning that the governor’s office has been “grossly mismanaged.”

(Nonrestrictive—explanatory material follows *who*. Note the inclusion of commas.)

See also p. 103 and the entry for *restrictive/nonrestrictive*.

their/there/they’re Although they sound alike, they are (*they’re!*) quite different. *Their* is the possessive form of the pronoun *they*:

Their presentation is scheduled for 3 p.m.

(*Their* modifies the noun *presentation*.)

When it begins a sentence, *there* is called an *expletive*. It is sometimes called a *false subject* because it doesn’t help determine the number of the verb:

There are many reasons to deny your petition.

(Note that the noun *reasons*, not *there*, controls the number of the verb.)

They’re is a contraction of *they* and *are*, used only informally when you want to combine subject and verb:

“They’re ready for you, Mr. President,” the aide announced.

there are/there is Beginning a sentence with the expletive *there* is generally an indirect and ineffective way to communicate. It adds clutter rather than meaning. When you have to use it, however, be aware that *there* is not the subject of the sentence and does not control the number of the verb. In these sentences the subject usually follows the verb and controls its number:

There are many ways to fend off bankruptcy.

(verb) (subj.)

Generally speaking, only the first part of a compound subject following the verb in these sentences is used to determine the number of the verb:

There is too much waste and inefficiency in this company.

(verb) (subj.) (subj.)

tortuous/torturous The origin of these adjectives is the same, “to twist,” but their usage is different. *Tortuous* connotes “twists and turns” and “complexity”:

The tortuous road led to the fire lookout atop the mountain.

(“twisted”)

The council took fifteen hours to decipher the tortuous budget plan.
 (“convoluted”)

Torturous is used in the context of its verb *torture*, “to inflict pain as a means of punishment.”

The late diagnosis of cancer led to four torturous rounds of chemotherapy.

It can also mean “twisted,” but in the sense of “agonizingly and excruciatingly so.”

The husband took his wife through a torturous set of negotiations to finalize the divorce.

toward/towards Dictionaries call *towards* “archaic and rare.” Save it for an antique convention.

try and/try to Writing is more precise than speech. Although we may say—and hear—such a sentence as “She will try and pass the test,” this is not proper language use. When we write that someone is *attempting* something, we do not mean that the person is both trying *and* doing; we mean the person is trying *to* do something. It makes sense to introduce the infinitive with the preposition *to*:

He told the reporters that he would try to reach the stranded climbers by nightfall.

unique Why is this adjective regularly adorned with superficial and redundant words, as in “most unique” or “very unique”? *Unique* means, simply, “the only one of its kind.” Don’t succumb to word inflation or to the embarrassing overstatement that it reveals.

up It can be anything but upbeat when it is coupled with a verb. Phrases such as *face up*, *slow up* and *head up* are clutter:

He must face up to the growing conflict in his department.

Why can’t this person just face the conflict?

verb and verbals The *verb* is the very life of a sentence. It breathes, sings, squeezes, inspires; it drives all the other sentence parts. When chosen correctly, it is in command. Pick your verbs wisely; they can

take you far. *Verbals*, however, are *not* verbs. (Can we be any more direct than that?) They are participial phrases, infinitives and gerunds. Although verbals sometimes have the *feel* of action, that is mainly related to the *-ing* endings on many of them and to the apparent verb form that follows *to* in infinitives. Don't be fooled: Verbals do not control the movement of a sentence. See p. 26.

very Be very wary of *very* when you are tempted to give an adjective more punch. If you get used to the practice, you might overlook better, more precise adjectives and contribute to clutter. *Very* is but one example of an overused intensifier. Others are *really*, *completely*, *extremely* and *totally*. For example, rather than describe someone as *very sad*, you could choose among these words: *depressed*, *melancholy*, *sorrowful* or *doleful*. See p. 156.

waiver/waver A *waiver* (a noun) is a document that relinquishes or abandons a known right, while to *waver* (a verb) is to waffle on a commitment, or to move/react unsteadily.

The registrar issued a waiver for the student's language requirement.

The mother wavered on her promise to send her son to snake charmer's school.

VE-WH

who's/whose If you want the subject-verb contraction, use *who's*:

Who's buying the tofu burritos tonight?
(Who is buying . . .)

If you need the possessive pronoun, use *whose*:

Whose turn is it to buy the tofu burritos tonight?

If you want to use *whose*, it must modify something directly or by implication. In the preceding sentence, *whose* modifies the noun *turn*.

who/whom Although informal, "shopping mall" speech has done its best to eliminate *whom* from this handsome pair of pronouns, the case for their "distinction with a difference" remains strong. In most writing situations, the use of *whom* does not seem elitist; it is merely correct:

Whom did the mayor name to her campaign committee?

The use of *whom* (the objective case of *who*) shows the reader that the pronoun receives the action of the verb rather than initiates it.

The jockey who the Thoroughbred Association said had thrown the race was cleared today by the state Racing Commission.

A breakdown of this sentence reveals that *who had thrown the race* is a subordinate clause and that *the Association said* is for attribution only. Obviously, proper selection of *who* and *whom* shows that you are a writer *who* understands the function of sentence parts. If you also want to utter such sentences as “Whom did you wish to see?” when someone comes to your door, well, that’s up to you.

your/you’re The distinctions made in the entries for *their/there/they’re* and *who’s/whose* apply here. If you want to use the possessive form of the personal pronoun *you*, use *your*:

Your Freudian slips are showing.
(*Your* modifies the noun *slips*.)

If you want to compress (contract) the subject–verb *you are*, use *you’re*.

You’re going to do well on *your* next grammar exam.

Index

A

- able/-ible suffixes, 185
- able-bodiedism, 184
- absolutely, using sparingly, 156
- accidental fragments, 54
- active voice, 25, 58, 157, 186
- adapt/adopt, 186
- adjective clause, 49
- adjectives, 35–40, 186
 - adverbs and, 38
 - degrees of, 37
 - participles and, 27
 - predicate, 37
- adopt/adapt, 186
- adverb clause, 49
- adverbs, 38–40, 187
 - conjunctions and, 44
 - conjunctive, 199
 - degrees of, 37
 - hyphen and, 117
 - intensifiers and, 156
 - position of, 144
- adverse/averse, 187
- advice/advise, 187
- affect/effect, 187
- after, 55
- ageism, 182
- agreement, 69–84
 - subject–verb, 16, 70–78
 - verbs and, 23
- aholic suffix, 188
- aid/aide, 188
- all, 76, 188
- all ready/already, 188
- allude/elude, 189
- almost, 144
- already/all ready, 188
- although, 55
- alumnus/alumni/alumna/
alumnae, 75, 201
- always, position of, 147
- among/between, 189
- and, 50
 - comma with, 102
- anecdotes, 170
- another, possessive case and, 93
- antecedent, 78, 190
- anxious/eager, 190
- any, 76, 188
- any body/any one, 191
- anybody/anyone, 191
- anyone, 212
 - possessive case and, 93
 - singular verb and, 72
- any one/any body, 191
- anyone/anybody, 191
- apostrophe, 100, 119
- appositive, 191
- as/than, 192
- as if/like, 191
- “The Associated Press
Stylebook”, 218
- assure/insure/ensure, 213
- as well as, 74, 192
- attribution, present tense and, 158
- audience, 9, 168
- auxiliary verbs, 60
- average/mean/median, 217
- averse/adverse, 187
- awfully, using sparingly, 156

B

bad/badly, 22, 192
because, 51, 55
because/since, 227
because of/due to, 193
believe/feel/think, 205
beside/besides, 193
between/among, 189
between you and me, 41, 91
bi-/semi-, 193
both, 74, 193
brand names/trademarks, 193
 bureaucratise, 194
but, 50, 194
 comma and, 102
 verb agreement and, 75

C

can/may, 194
 case, 32, 85–98, 195
cancel/censure, 195
chair/chairperson, 195
 children, referring to, 178
 choosing
 verbs, 156
 words, 137–144
 Churchill, Winston, 162
 citations, colon and, 113
cite/site/sight, 196
 clarity in writing, 11, 137–151, 196
 clauses, 48, 49, 196
 adverbs and, 39
 dependent, 202
 independent, 212
 misplaced, 145
 nonrestrictive, 103, 225
 parts of speech and, 30
 restrictive, 225
 clichés, avoiding, 159
 clutter in writing, 196

coherence in writing, 54, 137–151
 collective nouns, 75, 76, 196
 collision, 197
 colon, 100, 112, 197
 comma, 100, 102–109
 misuse of, 17, 106–109
 quotation marks and, 117
 comma splice error, 106, 110, 197
 comma-splice run-on
 sentences, 54
 commonly misspelled words, 135
 communication, 13
 comparatives, 39, 89
compared to/compared with, 197
complement/compliment, 198
 complete predicate, 47, 222
completely, using sparingly, 156
 complete subject, 47
 complex sentence, 51
compliment/complement, 198
compose/comprise, 198
 compound-complex sentence, 52
 compound modifiers, 118, 198
 compound predicate, comma
 and, 107
 compound sentence, 50
comprise/compose, 198
 conciseness in writing, 54,
 137–151
 confusion, comma and, 105, 106
 conjunctions, 42–44, 50, 51, 199
 conjunctive adverb, 199
 semicolon and, 110
 consonants, doubling or not,
 133–135
continual/continuous, 199
 contractions, 17, 35, 94
convince/persuade, 199
 coordinate adjectives, comma
 and, 105

coordinating conjunctions, 42, 50
 comma and, 102, 107, 110
 semicolon and, 111
 correctness in writing, 54
 correlative conjunctions, 43
council/counsel, 200
criterion/criteria, 201

D

damage/destroy, 200
 dangling modifiers, 17, 146, 200
 dash, 113, 201
data, 75, 201, 202
 dead constructions, 57
declared, 226
 demonstrative pronouns, 35
 dependent clause, 49, 196, 202
 subordinating conjunction
 and, 51
 descriptive adjectives, 36
 descriptive detail, 167
 descriptive nouns, 97
destroy/damage, 200
 diagramming sentences, 45
 dialogue, quotation marks and, 115
 Didion, Joan, 14
different from/different than, 202
differ from/differ with, 203
 direct object, 31, 47
discreet/discrete, 203
disinterested/uninterested, 203
 Dolan, Carrie, 154
 Donne, John, 41
drugs/narcotics/medicine, 203
due to/because of, 193

E

each/either/neither, 203
each, singular verb and, 72
eager/anxious, 190

editing, 15, 157
effect/affect, 187
either . . . or/neither . . . nor, 204
 verb agreement and, 75
either/neither/each, 203
either, singular verb and, 72, 73
 “The Elements of Style” (White),
 171
elicit/illicit, 204
 ellipsis, 100, 120
elucidated, 226
elude/allude, 189
 e-mailing, 4
eminent/imminent, 204
 empathy, 173–184
enormity/enormousness, 204
ensure/assure/insure, 213
 errors, 14–18
 in parallelism, 79–82
 in sentences, 52–65
 euphemisms, 142
even, position of, 144
every, singular verb
 and, 73
everybody, possessive case and, 93
everybody/everyone, 205
everyone, possessive case and, 93
everyone, 72, 212
evoke/invoke, 214
 exclamation mark, 46, 100, 122,
 205
 quotation marks and, 117
 exclamations, 44
 expletives, 57
extremely, using sparingly, 156

F

“fancy” words, 142
farther/further, 205
feel/think/believe, 205

few, 193, 212
 plural verb and, 74
fewer/less, 205
figurative/literal, 216
 figures of speech, playing with, 160
 first sentence, 66
flaunt/flout, 206
 focus, 11
 foreign plurals, 74, 75, 201
 fractions, verb agreement and, 77
 fragments, 49, 52–54, 150, 206
 bending rules and, 164–166
 full-stop, 46
further/farther, 205

G

gender
 referring to, 179, 206
 sexist language and, 82–84,
 174–179, 206
 generic *he*, myth of, 175–177
 gerunds, 26, 93
good/well, 207
 grammar
 communication and, 13
 importance of, 15
 purpose of, 18
 guide to, 185–232
 grammatical conventions, 10
 Greek/Latin derivatives, plurals
 and, 201

H

half, verb agreement and, 77
 Hall, Donald, 159
hanged/hung, 208
hardly, position of, 144
he/she, 206
he, 175–177
 hearing, 11, 166

helping verbs, 60
her, 92
hers, 92
herself, 97
 heterosexism, 179–181
himself, 97
his, 92
historic/historical, 208
 homonyms (homophones), 208
 spelling and, 125, 129
hopefully, 209
however, semicolon and, 110
hung/hanged, 208
 hyphen, 100, 117, 209

I

I/me, 30, 41
 -ible/-able suffixes, 185
 -ics suffix, 210
ie/ei, spelling and, 132
if/whether, 55, 210
illicit/elicit, 204
 imagery, 167–171
imminent/eminant, 204
impact, 211
 imperative verbs, 26
imply/infer, 211
in/into, 213
including, colon and, 113
 indefinite pronouns, 33, 212
 independent clause, 49, 111,
 196, 212
 colon and, 113
 comma and, 102
 semicolon and, 110
 subordinating conjunction
 and, 51
 indicative verbs, 26
 indirect object, 47
infer/imply, 211

infinitive, 24, 25, 27
 adjectival function and, 38
 -*ing* suffix, 212
initiate/instigate, 213
 instant messaging, 3–6
instigate/initiate, 213
insure/ensure/assure, 213
 intensifiers, using sparingly, 156
 interjections, 44
 interrogative pronouns, 34, 91
 intransitive verbs, 20, 21
invoke/evoke, 214
irregardless, 214
 -*isms*, 184
it/it's, 33
it, singular verb and, 73
 items in a series
 comma and, 104
 semicolon and, 111
it is/there is, 57, 58
its, 92
its/it's, 94, 214
itself, 97
 -*ize* suffix, 214

J

jargon, 144, 194
 job titles, 177
just, position of, 144

K

kind of/sort of, 215

L

language
 sexist, 82–84, 174–179, 206
 “uglyizing,” 139
 Latin/Greek derivatives, plurals
 and, 201
lay/lie, 215

lead sentence, 66
lend/loan, 216
less/fewer, 205
lie/lay, 215
like/as if, 191
 limiting adjectives, 36
 linking verbs, 20, 22, 216
 complement of, 48
 nominative case and, 87
 predicate adjective/predicate
 nominative, 222
 listening, 11
literal/figurative, 216
 liveliness, 155–158
loan/lend, 216
loath/loathe, 217
loose/lose, 217

M

main clause, 49
 making sense, 148–151
man, 174
many, 74, 193
 marital status, referring to, 178
may/can, 194
may/might, 217
me
 between you and me, 41, 91
 me/I, 30
mean/median/average, 217
 meaning, spelling and, 129
 media, 201
 media multitasking, 6
median/average/mean, 217
medicine/drugs/narcotics, 203
memoranda, 75
men, 175
merely, position of, 144
 messages, communicating, 8
might/may, 217

mine, 92
 misplaced clauses, 145
 misplaced modifiers, 17
 misplaced phrases, 145
 misplaced words, 144
Miss/Mrs./Ms., 83
 misspelled words, 135. *See also*
 spelling
 modifiers
 compound, 198
 dangling, 17, 146, 200
 nouns and, 31
 mood, of verbs, 26
moreover, semicolon and, 110
more than/over, 218
most, 76, 188
Mr., 83
much, singular verb and, 72
 multitasking, 6
my, 92
myself, 97

N

names, referring to, 178
narcotics/medicine/drugs, 203
nearly, position of, 144
neither . . . nor/either . . . or, 75,
 204
neither/each/either, 203
neither, singular verb and, 72
nevertheless, semicolon and, 110
 nicknames, quotation marks
 and, 116
 nominative case, 32, 85, 86–90
none, 76, 77, 218
 nonrestrictive clause, 103, 225
non-white, avoiding, 182
no one, singular verb and, 72
nor, 50
 comma and, 102

nothing, singular verb and, 72
 noun clause, 49
 nouns, 31
 case and, 86
 collective, 196
 descriptive, 97
 possessive case and, 95–97
 “verbizing,” 139
 noun substitute. *See* pronouns
a number of/the number of, 190
number, plural verb and, 75
 numerals, as figures or spelled
 out, 218

O

objective case, 32, 85, 90–92
occur/take place, 219
off of, 219
one
 possessive case and, 93
 singular verb and, 72
one of the/the only one of the,
 219
only, position of, 144
or, 50
 comma and, 102
 verb agreement and, 75
 organizing thoughts, 9
 originality, 158–161
our/ours, 92
ourselves, 97
over/more than, 218
 oversubordinated sentences, 56

P

parallel structure, 16, 79–84, 148,
 163, 220
 common errors and, 79–82
 sexism and, 82–84
 paraphrase, 220

- parentheses, 100, 121, 220
 parenthetical expressions, comma
 and, 105
part, verb agreement and, 77
 participial phrases, comma
 and, 106
 participles, 27, 38
 parts of speech, 19–44, 30
 passive voice, 18, 25, 58–65,
 186, 220
 correcting misuse of, 63
 disadvantages of, 61–63
 past participle, 25
 past tense, 25
people/persons, 221
people, avoiding sexist language
 and, 175
 period, 46, 100, 101
 parentheses and, 121
 quotation marks and, 117
person, avoiding sexist language
 and, 175
 personal pronouns, 32, 85
 objective case and, 90
 possessive case and, 92–94
persons/people, 175, 221
persuade/convince, 199
phenomenon/phenomena, 201
 phrases, 20, 49
 misplaced, 145
 parts of speech and, 30
 repetition and, 162
 physical appearance, referring
 to, 179
 Piercy, Marge, 13
plenty, verb agreement and, 77
 plurals, Latin/Greek derivatives
 and, 201
 plural subjects, 74–78
poor/pore/pour, 221
positively, using sparingly, 156
 possessive case, 32, 86, 92–98
 possessive pronouns,
 92–94
 possessives, 17, 221
 nouns and, 31
pour/poor/pore, 221
precede/proceed, 221
 precision, 11
 predicate, 47, 222
 predicate adjective, 37, 222
 predicate nominative, 31, 222
 prefixes, hyphen and, 119
 prepositional phrase, 41, 47, 48
 who/whom and, 89
 prepositions, 40–42, 222
 object of, 31
 present participle, 25
 present tense, 157
preventive/preventative, 222
principal/principle, 223
prior to, 223
proceed/precede, 221
 pronouns, 32–35, 223
 antecedent and, 78
 case and, 85
 indefinite, 212
 parts of speech and, 30
 pronoun-subject agreement
 and, 16
 reflexive, 97
 pronunciation, spelling and, 126
 proofreading, 127
proved/proven, 223
 publications, quotation marks
 and, 116
 punctuation, 46, 99–122
 guidelines for, 100
 purposeful fragments, 54
 putting words together, 144–148

Q

- question mark, 46, 122
 - quotation marks and, 117
- questions and answers, colon and, 112
- quotation/quote*, 224
- quotation marks, 100, 114–117, 224
 - ellipsis and, 121
 - punctuation and, 117
- quotations
 - colon and, 112, 113
 - comma and, 109
 - lively writing and, 168–170
 - present tense and, 158
- quote/quotation*, 224

R

- racism, 181
- reading, 7
- real/really*, 224
- really*, using sparingly, 156
- rebut/refute*, 224
- redundancy, 141, 157
- reference books
 - “The Associated Press Stylebook”, 218
 - “The Elements of Style”, 171
- reflexive pronouns, 97
 - comma and, 108
- refute/rebut*, 224
- relative pronouns, 34, 51, 85
 - objective case and, 91
- reluctant/reticent*, 225
- renown/renowned*, 225
- repetition, 162
- rest*, 77
- restrictive clause, 225
 - comma and, 103

- reticent/reluctant*, 225
- revising, 11
- rhythm of writing, 161–167
- run-on sentences, 54, 150, 226
 - bending rules and, 164–166

S

- said*, 226
- scarcely*, position of, 144
- secrets to good writing, 7–14
- semi-/bi-*, 193
- semicolon, 100, 109–111, 226
 - quotation marks and, 117
- sense, 173–184
 - ensuring, 148–151
 - spelling and, 129
- sensitivity, 173–184
- sentence fragments, 150
- sentences, 19, 45–67, 226
 - diagramming, 45
 - errors in, 52–65
 - lead sentence and, 66
 - oversubordinated, 56
 - parts of, 47
 - run-on, 54, 150, 164–166, 226
 - types of, 50–52
 - varying length of, 163
- set/sit*, 227
- several*, 193
 - plural verb and, 74
- sexism in writing, 174–179, 206
 - parallel structure and, 82–84
- she/he*, 206
- showing vs. telling, 168
- sight/cite/site*, 196
- simple predicate, 47, 222
- simple sentence, 50
- simple subject, 47
- since/because*, 227

- since*, 55
 singular subjects, 72–78
sit/set, 227
site/sight/cite, 196
so
 comma and, 102
 using sparingly, 156
some, 76, 188, 212
someone
 possessive case and, 93
 singular verb and, 72
sort of/kind of, 215
 sound of writing, 161–167
 sounding words, spelling and,
 128
 spelling, 123–136
 commonly misspelled words
 and, 135
 pronunciation and, 126
 strategies for improving,
 127–135
 split constructions, 146, 227
stated, 226
strata, 75
 structure, parallel. *See* parallel
 structure
 style, 153–171
 liveliness and, 155–158
 sound/rhythm of, 161–167
 subjective, 85
 subjects, 19, 31, 47
 parts of speech and, 30
 plural, 74–78
 singular, 72–78
 subject–pronoun agreement
 and, 16
 subject–verb agreement and,
 16, 70–78
 subjunctive mood, 210
 subjunctive verbs, 26
 subordinate clause, 49
 comma and, 107
 subordinating conjunctions, 43,
 51, 55
 subordination, 56
 suffixes
 hyphen and, 119
 spelling and, 131
 superlatives, 39
- T**
take place/occur, 219
 tense, of verbs, 24
 text messaging, 3–6
than/as, 192
than/then, 228
than clauses, case and, 89
that/which/who, 17, 225, 228
that, 34, 35, 51, 139–141
their, 92
their/there/they're, 94, 229
theirs, 92
then/than, 228
there/they're/their, 229
there is/it is, 57, 58
there is/there are, 57, 229
these, 35
they're/their/there, 229
think/believe/feel, 205
this, 35
those, 35
 time, colon and, 113
 tips for good writing, 7–14
 titles, referring to, 178
to be
 compound modifiers and,
 118
 passive voice and, 60

together with, singular verb and, 74
tortuous/torturous, 229
toward/towards, 230
trademarks/brand names, 193
 transitive verbs, 20, 21
truly, using sparingly, 156
try and/try to, 230

U

“uglyizing” language, 139
uninterested/disinterested, 203
unique, 230
up, 138, 230
uttered, 226

V

vague words, 142
 verbal phrase, 48
 verbals, 26–28, 230
 adjectival function and, 38
 verb forms, 20
 “verbizing” nouns, 139
 verbs, 230
 adverbs and, 38
 agreement and, 23
 choosing carefully, 156
 function of, 20
 linking, 216
 mood of, 26
 parts of, 24
 parts of speech and, 30
 split, 146, 227
 subject–verb agreement and,
 16, 70–78
 tense and, 24
 voice of, 25
very, 231
 using sparingly, 156

vocabulary, 10
 voice, 25, 58–65, 186. *See also*
 active voice; passive voice
 shifting from active to
 passive, 65

W

waiver/waver, 231
well/good, 207
what, 47
when, 51, 55
where, 55
whether/if, 210
which/who/that, 17, 225, 228
which, 34, 51
while, 55
 White, E. B., 171
who/that/which, 228
who/whom, 88, 91, 231
who/whose, 93
who, 34, 51
 nominative case and, 85
who’s/whose, 94, 231
whom, 47, 51
 objective case and, 85
whose, 51
 possessive case and, 86
 wordiness, 141, 157
 words
 choosing, 137–144
 “fancy,” 142
 how they sound, 11, 166
 misplaced, 144
 playing with, 161
 putting together, 144–148
 repetition and, 162
 vague, 142
 word use guide, 185–232

writing

- clarity/conciseness/coherence
 - and, 11, 54, 137–151, 196
- devoting time to, 12
- displaying sensitivity in,
 - 173–184
- errors and, 14–18
- lively writing and, 168–170
- organizing thoughts and, 9
- tips for, 7–14

Y

- yet*, 50
 - comma and, 102
- you*, implied, 46
- your*, 92
- your/you're*, 94, 232
- yours*, 92
- yourself*, 97